

# Package ‘MiscMetabar’

July 21, 2025

**Type** Package

**Title** Miscellaneous Functions for Metabarcoding Analysis

**Version** 0.14.3

**Description** Facilitate the description, transformation, exploration, and reproducibility of metabarcoding analyses. ‘MiscMetabar’ is mainly built on top of the ‘phyloseq’, ‘dada2’ and ‘targets’ R packages. It helps to build reproducible and robust bioinformatics pipelines in R. ‘MiscMetabar’ makes ecological analysis of alpha and beta-diversity easier, more reproducible and more powerful by integrating a large number of tools. Important features are described in Taudière A. (2023) <[doi:10.21105/joss.06038](https://doi.org/10.21105/joss.06038)>.

**License** AGPL-3

**Encoding** UTF-8

**LazyData** true

**Depends** R (>= 4.1.0), phyloseq, ggplot2 (>= 3.5.0), dada2, dplyr, purrr

**Suggests** adespatial, ANCOMBC, BiocManager, Biostrings, circlize, ComplexUpset, DECIPHER, DESeq2, devtools, DT, edgeR, formattable, ggalluvial, ggfittext, gghalves, ggh4x, ggstatsplot, ggridges, ggVennDiagram, glmulti, gtsummary, grDevices, grid, gridExtra, here, httr, iNEXT, indicpecies, IRanges, jsonlite, knitr, magrittr, methods, mia, mixtools, multcompView, networkD3, pak, patchwork, pbapply, permute, phangorn, phyloseqGraphTest, pkgnet, plotly, plyr, reshape2, rmarkdown, rotl, Rtsne, scales, seqinr, SRS, stringr, SummarizedExperiment, testthat (>= 3.0.0), tibble, tidyr, treemapify, umap, uwot, vegan, venneuler, vctrs, viridis, withr, spelling

**RoxygenNote** 7.3.2

**URL** <https://github.com/adrietaudiere/MiscMetabar>,  
<https://adrietaudiere.github.io/MiscMetabar/>

**biocViews** Sequencing, Microbiome, Metagenomics, Clustering, Classification, Visualization

**BugReports** <https://github.com/adrietaudiere/MiscMetabar/issues>

**Imports** ape, lifecycle, rlang, stats

**Config/testthat/edition** 3

**Config/testthat/parallel** true

**VignetteBuilder** knitr

**Language** en-US

**NeedsCompilation** no

**Author** Adrien Taudière [aut, cre, cph] (ORCID:  
<<https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1088-1182>>)

**Maintainer** Adrien Taudière <adrien.taudiere@zaclys.net>

**Repository** CRAN

**Date/Publication** 2025-06-21 14:00:02 UTC

## Contents

MiscMetabar-package . . . . .	5
accu_plot . . . . .	5
accu_plot_balanced_modality . . . . .	7
accu_samp_threshold . . . . .	9
add_blast_info . . . . .	10
add_dna_to_phyloseq . . . . .	11
add_funguild_info . . . . .	11
add_info_to_sam_data . . . . .	12
add_new_taxonomy_pq . . . . .	13
adonis_pq . . . . .	15
adonis_rarperm_pq . . . . .	17
all_object_size . . . . .	19
ancombc_pq . . . . .	19
are_modality_even_depth . . . . .	20
assign_blastn . . . . .	21
assign_dada2 . . . . .	24
assign_idtaxa . . . . .	26
assign_sintax . . . . .	28
assign_vsearch_lca . . . . .	30
as_binary_otu_table . . . . .	34
biplot_pq . . . . .	35
blast_pq . . . . .	37
blast_to_derep . . . . .	38
blast_to_phyloseq . . . . .	40
build_phytree_pq . . . . .	41
chimera_detection_vs . . . . .	43
chimera_removal_vs . . . . .	45
circle_pq . . . . .	46
clean_pq . . . . .	48
compare_pairs_pq . . . . .	49
count_seq . . . . .	50

cutadapt_remove_primers . . . . .	51
data_fungi . . . . .	53
data_fungi_mini . . . . .	54
data_fungi_sp_known . . . . .	55
diff_fct_diff_class . . . . .	55
distri_1_taxa . . . . .	57
dist_bycol . . . . .	58
dist_pos_control . . . . .	59
fac2col . . . . .	60
filter_asv_blast . . . . .	60
filter_trim . . . . .	62
filt_taxa_pq . . . . .	63
filt_taxa_wo_NA . . . . .	65
format2dada2 . . . . .	66
format2dada2_species . . . . .	67
format2sintax . . . . .	68
formattable_pq . . . . .	69
funguild_assign . . . . .	72
funky_color . . . . .	73
get_file_extension . . . . .	74
get_funguild_db . . . . .	75
ggaluv_pq . . . . .	75
ggbetween_pq . . . . .	77
ggscatt_pq . . . . .	79
ggvenn_pq . . . . .	80
glmutli_pq . . . . .	83
graph_test_pq . . . . .	85
hill_curves_pq . . . . .	86
hill_pq . . . . .	88
hill_test_rarperm_pq . . . . .	90
hill_tuckey_pq . . . . .	92
iNEXT_pq . . . . .	93
is_cutadapt_installed . . . . .	94
is_falco_installed . . . . .	95
is_krona_installed . . . . .	96
is_mumu_installed . . . . .	96
is_swarm_installed . . . . .	97
is_vsearch_installed . . . . .	98
krona . . . . .	98
LCBD_pq . . . . .	100
learn_idtaxa . . . . .	101
list_fastq_files . . . . .	102
lulu . . . . .	103
lulu_pq . . . . .	105
merge_krona . . . . .	107
merge_samples2 . . . . .	108
merge_taxa_vec . . . . .	110
MiscMetabar-deprecated . . . . .	111

multiplot_pq . . . . .	112
multiplot . . . . .	113
multitax_bar_pq . . . . .	114
multi_biplot_pq . . . . .	115
mumu_pq . . . . .	116
normalize_prop_pq . . . . .	117
no_legend . . . . .	118
perc . . . . .	119
phyloseq_to_edgeR . . . . .	120
physeq_or_string_to_dna . . . . .	120
plot_ancombc_pq . . . . .	121
plot_complexity_pq . . . . .	123
plot_deseq2_pq . . . . .	125
plot_edgeR_pq . . . . .	126
plot_guild_pq . . . . .	128
plot_LCBD_pq . . . . .	129
plot_mt . . . . .	131
plot_refseq_extremity_pq . . . . .	132
plot_refseq_pq . . . . .	133
plot_SCBD_pq . . . . .	134
plot_tax_pq . . . . .	135
plot_tsne_pq . . . . .	137
plot_var_part_pq . . . . .	139
postcluster_pq . . . . .	141
psmelt_samples_pq . . . . .	144
rarefy_sample_count_by_modality . . . . .	145
read_pq . . . . .	146
rename_samples . . . . .	147
rename_samples_otu_table . . . . .	148
reorder_taxa_pq . . . . .	148
resolve_vector_ranks . . . . .	149
ridges_pq . . . . .	153
rotl_pq . . . . .	155
sample_data_with_new_names . . . . .	156
sam_data_matching_names . . . . .	157
sankey_pq . . . . .	158
save_pq . . . . .	159
search_exact_seq_pq . . . . .	160
select_one_sample . . . . .	161
select_taxa . . . . .	162
signif_ancombc . . . . .	163
simplify_taxo . . . . .	164
SRS_curve_pq . . . . .	165
subsample_fastq . . . . .	166
subset_samples_pq . . . . .	167
subset_taxa_pq . . . . .	168
subset_taxa_tax_control . . . . .	169
summary_plot_pq . . . . .	170

swarm_clustering . . . . .	171
taxa_as_columns . . . . .	173
taxa_as_rows . . . . .	173
taxa_only_in_one_level . . . . .	174
tax_bar_pq . . . . .	175
tax_datatable . . . . .	176
tbl_sum_samdata . . . . .	178
tbl_sum_taxtable . . . . .	179
Tengeler2020_pq . . . . .	180
track_wkflow . . . . .	180
track_wkflow_samples . . . . .	182
transp . . . . .	182
treemap_pq . . . . .	183
tsne_pq . . . . .	185
umap_pq . . . . .	185
unique_or_na . . . . .	187
upset_pq . . . . .	188
upset_test_pq . . . . .	191
var_par_pq . . . . .	192
var_par_rarperm_pq . . . . .	193
venn_pq . . . . .	195
verify_pq . . . . .	196
vsearch_clustering . . . . .	197
vs_search_global . . . . .	199
write_pq . . . . .	200
<b>Index</b>	<b>203</b>

---

MiscMetabar-package	MiscMetabar <i>package</i>
---------------------	----------------------------

---

### Description

Functions to help analyze and visualize metabarcoding data. Mainly based on the phyloseq and dada2 packages.

---

accu_plot	<i>Plot accumulation curves for phyloseq-class object</i>
-----------	---

---

### Description

Note that as most bioinformatic pipeline discard singleton, accumulation curves from metabarcoding cannot be interpreted in the same way as with conventional biodiversity sampling techniques.

**Usage**

```

accu_plot(
  physeq,
  fact = NULL,
  add_nb_seq = TRUE,
  step = NULL,
  by.fact = FALSE,
  ci_col = NULL,
  col = NULL,
  lwd = 3,
  leg = TRUE,
  print_sam_names = FALSE,
  ci = 2,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor in physeq@sam_data used to plot different lines
add_nb_seq	(default: TRUE, logical) Either plot accumulation curves using sequences or using samples
step	(Integer) distance among points calculated to plot lines. A low value give better plot but is more time consuming. Only used if add_nb_seq = TRUE.
by.fact	(default: FALSE, logical) First merge the OTU table by factor to plot only one line by factor
ci_col	Color vector for confidence interval. Only use if add_nb_seq = FALSE. If add_nb_seq = TRUE, you can use ggplot to modify the plot.
col	Color vector for lines. Only use if add_nb_seq = FALSE. If add_nb_seq = TRUE, you can use ggplot to modify the plot.
lwd	(default: 3) thickness for lines. Only use if add_nb_seq = FALSE.
leg	(default: TRUE, logical) Plot legend or not. Only use if add_nb_seq = FALSE.
print_sam_names	(default: FALSE, logical) Print samples names or not? Only use if add_nb_seq = TRUE.
ci	(default: 2, integer) Confidence interval value used to multiply the standard error to plot confidence interval
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">ggplot</a> if add_nb_seq = TRUE or to <a href="#">plot</a> if add_nb_seq = FALSE

**Value**

A [ggplot2](#) plot representing the richness accumulation plot if add\_nb\_seq = TRUE, else, if add\_nb\_seq = FALSE return a base plot.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**[specaccum accu\\_samp\\_threshold\(\)](#)**Examples**

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
GP <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, GlobalPatterns@tax_table[, 1] == "Archaea")
GP <- rarefy_even_depth(subset_samples_pq(GP, sample_sums(GP) > 3000))
p <- accu_plot(GP, "SampleType", add_nb_seq = TRUE, by.fact = TRUE, step = 10)
p <- accu_plot(GP, "SampleType", add_nb_seq = TRUE, step = 10)

p + theme(legend.position = "none")

p + xlim(c(0, 400))
```

---

`accu_plot_balanced_modality`

*Plot accumulation curves with balanced modality and depth rarefaction*

---

**Description**

This function (i) rarefy (equalize) the number of samples per modality of a factor and (ii) rarefy the number of sequences per sample (depth). The seed is set to 1:nperm. Thus, with exactly the same parameter, including nperm values, results must be identical.

**Usage**

```
accu_plot_balanced_modality(  
  physeq,  
  fact,  
  nperm = 99,  
  step = 2000,  
  by.fact = TRUE,  
  progress_bar = TRUE,  
  quantile_prob = 0.975,  
  rarefy_by_sample_before_merging = TRUE,  
  sample.size = 1000,  
  verbose = FALSE,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) The variable to rarefy. Must be present in the sam_data slot of the physeq object.
nperm	(int) The number of permutations to perform.
step	(int) distance among points calculated to plot lines. A low value give better plot but is more time consuming.
by.fact	(logical, default TRUE) First merge the OTU table by factor to plot only one line by factor
progress_bar	(logical, default TRUE) Do we print progress during the calculation?
quantile_prob	(float, [0:1]) the value to compute the quantile. Minimum quantile is compute using 1-quantile_prob.
rarefy_by_sample_before_merging	(logical, default TRUE): rarefy_by_sample_before_merging = FALSE is buggy for the moment. Please only use rarefy_by_sample_before_merging = TRUE
sample.size	(int) A single integer value equal to the number of reads being simulated, also known as the depth. See <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> .
verbose	(logical). If TRUE, print additional information.
...	Other params for be passed on to <a href="#">accu_plot()</a> function

**Value**

A ggplot2 plot representing the richness accumulation plot

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[accu\\_plot\(\)](#), [rarefy\\_sample\\_count\\_by\\_modality\(\)](#), [phyloseq::rarefy\\_even\\_depth\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data_fungi_woNA4Time <-
  subset_samples(data_fungi, !is.na(Time))
data_fungi_woNA4Time@sam_data$Time <- paste0("time-", data_fungi_woNA4Time@sam_data$Time)
accu_plot_balanced_modality(data_fungi_woNA4Time, "Time", nperm = 3)

data_fungi_woNA4Height <-
  subset_samples(data_fungi, !is.na(Height))
accu_plot_balanced_modality(data_fungi_woNA4Height, "Height", nperm = 3)
```



---

accu_samp_threshold	<i>Compute the number of sequence to obtain a given proportion of ASV in accumulation curves</i>
---------------------	--

---

### Description

Note that as most bioinformatic pipeline discard singleton, accumulation curves from metabarcoding cannot be interpreted in the same way as with conventional biodiversity sampling techniques.

### Usage

```
accu_samp_threshold(res_accuplot, threshold = 0.95)
```

### Arguments

res_accuplot	the result of the function <code>accu_plot()</code>
threshold	the proportion of ASV to obtain in each samples

### Value

a value for each sample of the number of sequences needed to obtain threshold proportion of the ASV

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[accu\\_plot\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
GP <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, GlobalPatterns@tax_table[, 1] == "Archaea")
GP <- rarefy_even_depth(subset_samples_pq(GP, sample_sums(GP) > 3000))
p <- accu_plot(GP, "SampleType", add_nb_seq = TRUE, by.fact = TRUE, step = 10)

val_threshold <- accu_samp_threshold(p)

summary(val_threshold)

##' Plot the number of sequences needed to accumulate 0.95% of ASV in 50%, 75%
##' and 100% of samples
p + geom_vline(xintercept = quantile(val_threshold, probs = c(0.50, 0.75, 1)))
```

---

add_blast_info	<i>Add information from <code>blast_pq()</code> to the tax_table slot of a phyloseq object</i>
----------------	--

---

### Description

Basically a wrapper of `blast_pq()` with option `unique_per_seq = TRUE` and `score_filter = FALSE`.

Add the information to the taxtable

### Usage

```
add_blast_info(  
  physeq,  
  fasta_for_db,  
  silent = FALSE,  
  suffix = "blast_info",  
  ...  
)
```

### Arguments

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
<code>fasta_for_db</code>	path to a fasta file to make the blast database
<code>silent</code>	(logical) If true, no message are printing.
<code>suffix</code>	(character) The suffix to name the new columns. Set the suffix to "" in order to remove any suffix.
<code>...</code>	Additional arguments passed on to <code>blast_pq()</code> function.

### Value

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object with more information in `tax_table` based on a blast on a given database

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

---

add_dna_to_phyloseq	<i>Add dna in refseq slot of a physeq object using taxa names and renames taxa using prefix_taxa_names and number (default Taxa_1, Taxa_2 ...)</i>
---------------------	--

---

**Description**

Useful in targets bioinformatic pipeline.

**Usage**

```
add_dna_to_phyloseq(physeq, prefix_taxa_names = "Taxa_")
```

**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
prefix\_taxa\_names (default "Taxa\_"): the prefix of taxa names (eg. "ASV\_" or "OTU\_")

**Value**

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object with refseq slot and new taxa names

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

---

add_funguild_info	<i>Add information about Guild for FUNGI the FUNGuild databse</i>
-------------------	---

---

**Description**

Please cite Nguyen et al. 2016 ([doi:10.1016/j.funeco.2015.06.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.funeco.2015.06.006))

**Usage**

```
add_funguild_info(  
  physeq,  
  taxLevels = c("Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species"),  
  db_url = "http://www.stbates.org/funguild_db_2.php"  
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
taxLevels Name of the 7 columns in tax\_table required by funguild  
db\_url a length 1 character string giving the URL to retrieve the database from

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to FUNGuildR package and the associate publication ([doi:10.1016/j.funeco.2015.06.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.funeco.2015.06.006)) if you use this function.

## Value

A new object of class physeq with Guild information added to tax\_table slot

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## See Also

[plot\\_guild\\_pq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
## Not run:
# to avoid bug in CRAN when internet is not available
if (requireNamespace("httr")) {
  d_fung_mini <- add_funguild_info(data_fungi_mini,
    taxLevels = c(
      "Domain",
      "Phylum",
      "Class",
      "Order",
      "Family",
      "Genus",
      "Species"
    )
  )
  sort(table(d_fung_mini@tax_table[, "guild"]), decreasing = TRUE)
}

## End(Not run)
```

---

add\_info\_to\_sam\_data *Add information to sample\_data slot of a phyloseq-class object*

---

## Description

Warning: The value nb\_seq and nb\_otu may be outdated if you transform your phyloseq object, e.g. using the [subset\\_taxa\\_pq\(\)](#) function

**Usage**

```
add_info_to_sam_data(  
  physeq,  
  df_info = NULL,  
  add_nb_seq = TRUE,  
  add_nb_otu = TRUE  
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

df\_info : A dataframe with rownames matching for sample names of the phyloseq object

add\_nb\_seq (Logical, default TRUE) Does we add a column nb\_seq collecting the number of sequences per sample?

add\_nb\_otu (Logical, default TRUE) Does we add a column nb\_otu collecting the number of OTUs per sample?

**Value**

A phyloseq object with an updated sam\_data slot

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
data_fungi <- add_info_to_sam_data(data_fungi)  
boxplot(data_fungi@sam_data$nb_otu ~ data_fungi@sam_data$Time)  
  
new_df <- data.frame(  
  variable_1 = runif(n = nsamples(data_fungi), min = 1, max = 20),  
  variable_2 = runif(n = nsamples(data_fungi), min = 1, max = 2)  
)  
rownames(new_df) <- sample_names(data_fungi)  
data_fungi <- add_info_to_sam_data(data_fungi, new_df)  
plot(data_fungi@sam_data$nb_otu ~ data_fungi@sam_data$variable_1)
```

---

add\_new\_taxonomy\_pq *Add new taxonomic rank to a phyloseq object.*

---

**Description**

One of main use of this function is to add taxonomic assignment from a new database.

**Usage**

```

add_new_taxonomy_pq(
  physeq,
  ref_fasta,
  suffix = NULL,
  method = c("dada2", "sintax", "lca", "idtaxa", "blastn", "dada2_2steps"),
  trainingSet = NULL,
  min_bootstrap = NULL,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
ref_fasta	(required) A link to a database. passed on to <code>dada2::assignTaxonomy</code> .
suffix	(character) The suffix to name the new columns. If set to NULL (the default), the basename of the file reFasta is used with the name of the method. Set suffix to "" in order to remove any suffix.
method	(required, default "dada2") : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "dada2": <a href="#">dada2::assignTaxonomy()</a></li> <li>• "dada2_2step": <a href="#">assign_dada2()</a></li> <li>• "sintax": see <a href="#">assign_sintax()</a></li> <li>• "lca": see <a href="#">assign_vsearch_lca()</a></li> <li>• "idtaxa": see <a href="#">assign_idtaxa()</a></li> <li>• "blastn": see <a href="#">assign_blastn()</a></li> </ul>
trainingSet	see <a href="#">assign_idtaxa()</a> . Only used if method = "idtaxa". Note that if trainingSet is not NULL, the ref_fasta is overwrite by the trainingSet parameter. To customize learning parameters of the idtaxa algorithm you must use trainingSet computed by the function <a href="#">learn_idtaxa()</a> .
min_bootstrap	(Float [0:1]) Minimum bootstrap value to inform taxonomy. For each bootstrap below the min_bootstrap value, the taxonomy information is set to NA. Correspond to parameters : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dada2 &amp; dada2_2step: minBoot, default value = 0.5</li> <li>• sintax: min_bootstrap, default value = 0.5</li> <li>• lca: id, default value = 0.5. Note in that case, the bootstrap value is different. See the id parameter in <a href="#">assign_vsearch_lca()</a></li> <li>• idtaxa: threshold, default value = 0.6</li> <li>• blastn: This method do not take different bootstrap value. You may use method="vote" with different vote_algorithm as well as different filters parameters (min_id, min_bit_score, min_cover and min_e_value)</li> </ul>
...	Additional arguments passed on to the taxonomic assignment method.

**Value**

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object with a larger slot `tax_table`"

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[dada2::assignTaxonomy\(\)](#), [assign\\_sintax\(\)](#), [assign\\_vsearch\\_lca\(\)](#), [assign\\_sintax\(\)](#), [assign\\_blastn\(\)](#), [assign\\_dada2\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
ref_fasta <- system.file("extdata",
  "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz",
  package = "MiscMetabar", mustWork = TRUE
)
add_new_taxonomy_pq(data_fungi_mini, ref_fasta, method = "dada2")
add_new_taxonomy_pq(data_fungi_mini, ref_fasta, method = "dada2_2steps")
add_new_taxonomy_pq(data_fungi_mini, ref_fasta, method = "lca")
add_new_taxonomy_pq(data_fungi_mini, ref_fasta, method = "idtaxa")

# blastn doesn't work with fasta.gz format
ref_fasta <- system.file("extdata",
  "100_sp_UNITE_sh_general_release_dynamic_sintax.fasta",
  package = "MiscMetabar", mustWork = TRUE
)

dp <- add_new_taxonomy_pq(data_fungi_mini, ref_fasta,
  method = "blastn", min_id = 80, min_cover = 50, min_bit_score = 20,
  min_e_value = 1e-20
)
dp_tophit <- add_new_taxonomy_pq(data_fungi_mini, ref_fasta,
  method = "blastn", min_id = 80, min_cover = 50, min_bit_score = 20,
  min_e_value = 1e-20, method_algo = "top_hit"
)

## End(Not run)
```

---

adonis\_pq

*Permanova on a phyloseq object*

---

**Description**

A wrapper for the [vegan::adonis2\(\)](#) function in the case of physeq object.

**Usage**

```
adonis_pq(
  physeq,
  formula,
  dist_method = "bray",
  merge_sample_by = NULL,
  na_remove = FALSE,
  correction_for_sample_size = FALSE,
  rarefy_nb_seqs = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
formula	(required) the right part of a formula for <a href="#">vegan::adonis2()</a> . Variables must be present in the physeq@sam_data slot.
dist_method	(default "bray") the distance used. See <a href="#">phyloseq::distance()</a> for all available distances or run <a href="#">phyloseq::distanceMethodList()</a> . For aitchison and robust.aitchison distance, <a href="#">vegan::vegdist()</a> function is directly used.
merge_sample_by	a vector to determine which samples to merge using the <a href="#">merge_samples2()</a> function. Need to be in physeq@sam_data
na_remove	(logical, default FALSE) If set to TRUE, remove samples with NA in the variables set in formula.
correction_for_sample_size	(logical, default FALSE) If set to TRUE, the sample size (number of sequences by samples) is added to formula in the form $y \sim \text{Library\_Size} + \text{Biological\_Effect}$ following recommendation of <a href="#">Weiss et al. 2017</a> . <code>correction_for_sample_size</code> overcome <code>rarefy_nb_seqs</code> if both are TRUE.
rarefy_nb_seqs	(logical, default FALSE) Rarefy each sample (before merging if <code>merge_sample_by</code> is set) using <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> . if <code>correction_for_sample_size</code> is TRUE, <code>rarefy_nb_seqs</code> will have no effect.
verbose	(logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, prompt some messages.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">vegan::adonis2()</a> function. Note that the parameter <code>by</code> is important. If <code>by</code> is set to NULL (default) the p-value is computed for the entire model. <code>by = NULL</code> will assess the overall significance of all terms together, <code>by = "terms"</code> will assess significance for each term (sequentially from first to last), setting <code>by = "margin"</code> will assess the marginal effects of the terms (each marginal term analyzed in a model with all other variables), <code>by = "onedf"</code> will analyze one-degree-of-freedom contrasts sequentially. The argument is passed on to <code>anova.cca</code> .



**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `vegan::adonis2()` if you use this function.

**Value**

The function returns an `anova.cca` result object with a new column for partial  $R^2$ . See help of [vegan::adonis2\(\)](#) for more information.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
data(enterotype)

adonis_pq(enterotype, "SeqTech*Enterotype", na_remove = TRUE)
adonis_pq(enterotype, "SeqTech*Enterotype", na_remove = TRUE, by = "terms")
adonis_pq(enterotype, "SeqTech*Enterotype", na_remove = TRUE, by = "onedf")
adonis_pq(enterotype, "SeqTech*Enterotype", na_remove = TRUE, by = "margin")

adonis_pq(enterotype, "SeqTech", dist_method = "jaccard", by = "terms")
adonis_pq(enterotype, "SeqTech", dist_method = "robust.aitchison", by = "terms")
```

---

adonis_rarperm_pq	<i>Permanova (adonis) on permutations of rarefaction even depth</i>
-------------------	---

---

**Description**

Permanova are computed on a given number of rarefaction with different seed.number. This reduce the risk of a random drawing of a exceptional situation of an unique rarefaction.

**Usage**

```
adonis_rarperm_pq(
  physeq,
  formula,
  dist_method = "bray",
  merge_sample_by = NULL,
  na_remove = FALSE,
  rarefy_nb_seqs = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  nperm = 99,
  progress_bar = TRUE,
  quantile_prob = 0.975,
  sample.size = min(sample_sums(physeq)),
```

```
    ...
  )
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
formula	(required) the right part of a formula for <a href="#">vegan::adonis2()</a> . Variables must be present in the physeq@sam_data slot.
dist_method	(default "bray") the distance used. See <a href="#">phyloseq::distance()</a> for all available distances or run <a href="#">phyloseq::distanceMethodList()</a> . For aitchison and robust.aitchison distance, <a href="#">vegan::vegdist()</a> function is directly used.
merge_sample_by	a vector to determine which samples to merge using the <a href="#">merge_samples2()</a> function. Need to be in physeq@sam_data
na_remove	(logical, default FALSE) If set to TRUE, remove samples with NA in the variables set in formula.
rarefy_nb_seqs	(logical, default FALSE) Rarefy each sample (before merging if merge_sample_by is set) using <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> . if correction_for_sample_size is TRUE, rarefy_nb_seqs will have no effect.
verbose	(logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, prompt some messages.
nperm	(int, default = 99) The number of permutations to perform.
progress_bar	(logical, default TRUE) Do we print progress during the calculation.
quantile_prob	(float, [0:1]) the value to compute the quantile. Minimum quantile is computed using 1-quantile_prob.
sample.size	(int) A single integer value equal to the number of reads being simulated, also known as the depth. See <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> .
...	Other params to be passed on to <a href="#">adonis_pq()</a> function

## Value

A list of three dataframe representing the mean, the minimum quantile and the maximum quantile value for adonis results. See [adonis\\_pq\(\)](#).

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## See Also

[adonis\\_pq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("vegan")) {
  data_fungi_woNA <-
    subset_samples(data_fungi, !is.na(Time) & !is.na(Height))
  adonis_rarperm_pq(data_fungi_woNA, "Time*Height", na_remove = TRUE, nperm = 3)
}
```

---

all_object_size	<i>List the size of all objects of the GlobalEnv.</i>
-----------------	---

---

**Description**

Code from <https://tolstoy.newcastle.edu.au/R/e6/help/09/01/1121.html>

**Usage**

```
all_object_size()
```

**Value**

a list of size

---

ancombc_pq	<i>Run ANCOMBC2 on phyloseq object</i>
------------	--

---

**Description**

A wrapper for the [ANCOMBC: : ancombc2\(\)](#) function

**Usage**

```
ancombc_pq(physeq, fact, levels_fact = NULL, tax_level = "Class", ...)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor in physeq@sam_data used to plot different lines
levels_fact	(default NULL) The order of the level in the factor. Used for reorder levels and select levels (filter out levels not present en levels_fact)
tax_level	The taxonomic level passed on to <a href="#">ANCOMBC: : ancombc2()</a>
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">ANCOMBC: : ancombc2()</a> function.

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to [ANCOMBC: : ancombc2\(\)](#) if you use this function.

**Value**

The result of [ANCOMBC: : ancombc2\(\)](#) function

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
if (requireNamespace("mia")) {
  data_fungi_mini@tax_table <- phyloseq::tax_table(cbind(
    data_fungi_mini@tax_table,
    "taxon" = taxa_names(data_fungi_mini)
  ))
  res_height <- ancombc_pq(
    data_fungi_mini,
    fact = "Height",
    levels_fact = c("Low", "High"),
    verbose = TRUE
  )

  ggplot(
    res_height$res,
    aes(
      y = reorder(taxon, lfc_HeightHigh),
      x = lfc_HeightHigh,
      color = diff_HeightHigh
    )
  ) +
  geom_vline(xintercept = 0) +
  geom_segment(aes(
    xend = 0, y = reorder(taxon, lfc_HeightHigh),
    yend = reorder(taxon, lfc_HeightHigh)
  ), color = "darkgrey") +
  geom_point()

  res_time <- ancombc_pq(
    data_fungi_mini,
    fact = "Time",
    levels_fact = c("0", "15"),
    tax_level = "Family",
    verbose = TRUE
  )
}

## End(Not run)
```

---

are\_modality\_even\_depth

*Test if the mean number of sequences by samples is link to the modality of a factor*

---

**Description**

The aim of this function is to provide a warnings if samples depth significantly vary among the modalities of a factor present in the `sam_data` slot.

This function apply a Kruskal-Wallis rank sum test to the number of sequences per samples in function of the factor `fact`.

**Usage**

```
are_modality_even_depth(physeq, fact, boxplot = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
<code>fact</code>	(required): Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in <code>physeq@sam_data</code> .
<code>boxplot</code>	(logical) Do you want to plot boxplot?

**Value**

The result of a Kruskal-Wallis rank sum test

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
are_modality_even_depth(data_fungi_mini, "Time")$p.value  
are_modality_even_depth(rarefy_even_depth(data_fungi_mini), "Time")$p.value  
are_modality_even_depth(data_fungi_mini, "Height", boxplot = TRUE)
```

---

assign\_blastn

*Assign taxonomy using blastn algorithm and the blast software*

---

**Description**

Use the blast software.

**Usage**

```
assign_blastn(  
  physeq,  
  ref_fasta = NULL,  
  database = NULL,  
  blastpath = NULL,  
  behavior = c("return_matrix", "add_to_phyloseq"),  
  method_algo = c("vote", "top-hit"),
```

```

suffix = "_blastn",
min_id = 95,
min_bit_score = 50,
min_cover = 95,
min_e_value = 1e-30,
nb_voting = NULL,
column_names = c("Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species"),
vote_algorithm = c("consensus", "rel_majority", "abs_majority", "unanimity"),
strict = FALSE,
nb_agree_threshold = 1,
preference_index = NULL,
collapse_string = "/",
replace_collapsed_rank_by_NA = TRUE,
simplify_taxo = TRUE,
keep_blast_metrics = FALSE,
...
)

```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
ref_fasta	Either a DNASTringSet object or a path to a fasta file to make the blast database. It must be in syntax format. See <a href="#">assign_sintax()</a> .
database	path to a blast database. Only used if ref_fasta is not set.
blastpath	path to blast program.
behavior	Either "return_matrix" (default), or "add_to_phyloseq": <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"return_matrix" return a list of two matrix with taxonomic value in the first element of the list and bootstrap value in the second one.</li> <li>"add_to_phyloseq" return a phyloseq object with amended slot @taxtable. Only available if using physeq input and not seq2search input.</li> </ul>
method_algo	(One of "vote" or "top-hit"). If top-hit, only the better match is used to assign taxonomy. If vote, the algorithm takes all (or nb_voting if nb_voting is not null) select assignation and resolve the conflict using the function <a href="#">resolve_vector_ranks()</a> .
suffix	(character) The suffix to name the new columns. If set to "" (the default), the taxa_ranks algorithm is used without suffix.
min_id	(default: 95) the identity percent to take into account a references taxa
min_bit_score	(default: 50) the minimum bit score to take into account a references taxa
min_cover	(default: 50) cut of in query cover (%) to keep result
min_e_value	(default: 1e-30) cut of in e-value (%) to keep result The BLAST E-value is the number of expected hits of similar quality (score) that could be found just by chance.
nb_voting	(Int, default NULL). The number of taxa to keep before apply a vote to resolve conflict. If NULL all taxa passing the filters (min_id, min_bit_score, min_cover and min_e_value) are selected.

**column\_names** A vector of names for taxonomic ranks. Must correspond to names in the ref\_fasta files.  
**vote\_algorithm** the method to vote among "consensus", "rel\_majority", "abs\_majority" and "unanimity". See [resolve\\_vector\\_ranks\(\)](#) for more details.  
**strict** (Logical, default FALSE). See [resolve\\_vector\\_ranks\(\)](#) for more details.  
**nb\_agree\_threshold** See [resolve\\_vector\\_ranks\(\)](#) for more details.  
**preference\_index** See [resolve\\_vector\\_ranks\(\)](#) for more details.  
**collapse\_string** See [resolve\\_vector\\_ranks\(\)](#) for more details.  
**replace\_collapsed\_rank\_by\_NA** (Logical, default TRUE) See [resolve\\_vector\\_ranks\(\)](#) for more details.  
**simplify\_taxo** (logical default TRUE). Do we apply the function [simplify\\_taxo\(\)](#) to the phyloseq object?  
**keep\_blast\_metrics** (Logical, default FALSE). If TRUE, the blast metrics ("Query seq. length", "Taxa seq. length", "Alignment length", "% id. match", "e-value", "bit score" and "Query cover") are stored in the tax\_table.  
**...** Additional arguments passed on to [blast\\_pq\(\)](#)

### Value

- If behavior == "return\_matrix" :
  - If method\_algo = "top-hit" a matrix of taxonomic assignation
  - If method\_algo = "vote", a list of two matrix, the first is the raw taxonomic assignation (before vote). The second one is the taxonomic assignation in which conflicts are resolved using vote.
- If behavior == "add\_to\_phyloseq", return a new phyloseq object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
## Not run:
ref_fasta <- Biostrings::readDNASTringSet(system.file("extdata",
  "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz",
  package = "MiscMetabar", mustWork = TRUE
))

# assign_blastn(data_fungi_mini, ref_fasta = ref_fasta) # error because not
# enough sequences in db so none blast query passed the filters.
# So we used low score filter hereafter.

mat <- assign_blastn(data_fungi_mini,
```

```

ref_fasta = ref_fasta,
method_algo = "top-hit", min_id = 70, min_e_value = 1e-3, min_cover = 50,
min_bit_score = 20
)
head(mat)

assign_blastn(data_fungi_mini,
ref_fasta = ref_fasta, method_algo = "vote",
vote_algorithm = "rel_majority", min_id = 90, min_cover = 50,
behavior = "add_to_phyloseq"
)@tax_table

assign_blastn(data_fungi_mini,
ref_fasta = ref_fasta, method_algo = "vote",
vote_algorithm = "consensus", replace_collapsed_rank_by_NA = FALSE,
min_id = 90, min_cover = 50, behavior = "add_to_phyloseq"
)@tax_table

## End(Not run)

```

---

assign_dada2	<i>Assign taxonomy with dada2 using 2 steps assignTaxonomy and assignSpecies</i>
--------------	--

---

## Description

Mainly a wrapper of `dada2::assignTaxonomy()` and `dada2::assignSpecies()`

## Usage

```

assign_dada2(
  physeq = NULL,
  ref_fasta = NULL,
  seq2search = NULL,
  min_bootstrap = 0.5,
  tryRC = FALSE,
  taxa_ranks = c("Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species",
    "taxId"),
  use_assignSpecies = TRUE,
  trunc_absent_ranks = FALSE,
  nproc = 1,
  suffix = "",
  verbose = TRUE,
  seq_at_one_time = 2000,
  allowMultiple = FALSE,
  from_sintax = FALSE
)

```



**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
ref_fasta	(required) A link to a database in fasta.
seq2search	A DNASTringSet object of sequences to search for. Replace the physeq object.
min_bootstrap	(Float [0:1], default 0.5), See <a href="#">dada2::assignTaxonomy()</a>
tryRC	See <a href="#">dada2::assignTaxonomy()</a>
taxa_ranks	(vector of character) names for the column of the taxonomy
use_assignSpecies	(logical, default TRUE) Do the Species rank is obtained using <a href="#">dada2::assignSpecies()</a> ?
trunc_absent_ranks	(logical, default FALSE) Do ranks present in taxa_ranks but not present in the database are removed ?
nproc	(Float [0:1], default 0.5)
suffix	(character) The suffix to name the new columns. Default to "_idtaxa".
verbose	(logical). If TRUE, print additional information.
seq_at_one_time	How many sequences are treated at one time. See param n in <a href="#">dada2::assignSpecies()</a>
allowMultiple	(logical, default FALSE). Unchanged from <a href="#">dada2::assignSpecies()</a> . Defines the behavior when multiple exact matches against different species are returned. By default only unambiguous identifications are return. If TRUE, a concatenated string of all exactly matched species is returned. If an integer is provided, multiple identifications up to that many are returned as a concatenated string.
from_sintax	(logical, default FALSE). Set to TRUE if the ref_fasta database is in sintax format. See <a href="#">assign_sintax()</a> for more information about the sintax format.

**Value**

Either a an object of class phyloseq (if physeq is not NULL), or a taxonomic table if seq2search is used in place of physeq

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
data_fungi_mini2 <- assign_dada2(data_fungi_mini,
  ref_fasta = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz",
    package = "MiscMetabar"
  ), suffix = "_dada2",
  from_sintax = TRUE
)
## End(Not run)
```

---

assign\_idtaxa                      *A wrapper of IdTaxa*

---

## Description

This function is basically a wrapper of functions `DECIPHER::IdTaxa()` and `DECIPHER::LearnTaxa()`, please cite the DECIPHER package if you use this function. Note that if you want to specify parameters for the learning step you must use the `trainingSet` param instead of the `fasta_for_training`. The training file can be obtained using the function `learn_idtaxa()`.

It requires:

- either a `physeq` or `seq2search` object.
- either a `trainingSet` or a `fasta_for_training`

## Usage

```
assign_idtaxa(
  physeq,
  trainingSet = NULL,
  seq2search = NULL,
  fasta_for_training = NULL,
  behavior = "return_matrix",
  threshold = 60,
  column_names = c("Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species"),
  suffix = "_idtaxa",
  nproc = 1,
  unite = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
<code>trainingSet</code>	An object of class <code>Taxa</code> and subclass <code>Train</code> compatible with the class of test.
<code>seq2search</code>	A <code>DNAStrngSet</code> object of sequences to search for. Replace the <code>physeq</code> object.
<code>fasta_for_training</code>	A fasta file (can be gzip) to train the <code>trainingSet</code> using the function <code>learn_idtaxa()</code> . Only used if <code>trainingSet</code> is <code>NULL</code> . The reference database must contain taxonomic information in the header of each sequence in the form of a string starting with <code>";tax="</code> and followed by a comma-separated list of up to nine taxonomic identifiers. The only exception is if <code>unite=TRUE</code> . In that case the UNITE taxonomy is automatically formatted.
<code>behavior</code>	Either <code>"return_matrix"</code> (default), or <code>"add_to_phyloseq"</code> :

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "return_matrix" return a list of two objects. The first element is the taxonomic matrix and the second element is the raw results from DECIPHER::IdTaxa() function.</li> <li>• "add_to_phyloseq" return a phyloseq object with amended slot @taxtable. Only available if using physeq input and not seq2search input.</li> </ul>
threshold	(Int, default 60) Numeric specifying the confidence at which to truncate the output taxonomic classifications. Lower values of threshold will classify deeper into the taxonomic tree at the expense of accuracy, and vice-versa for higher values of threshold. See <a href="#">DECIPHER::IdTaxa()</a> man page.
column_names	(vector of character) names for the column of the taxonomy
suffix	(character) The suffix to name the new columns. Default to "_idtaxa".
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use
unite	(logical, default FALSE). If set to TRUE, the fasta_for_training file is formatted from UNITE format to syntax one, needed in fasta_for_training. Only used if trainingSet is NULL.
verbose	(logical). If TRUE, print additional information.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">IdTaxa</a>

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to [DECIPHER::IdTaxa\(\)](#) if you use this function.

### Value

Either a new phyloseq object with additional information in the @tax\_table slot or a list of two objects if behavior is "return\_matrix"

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[assign\\_sintax\(\)](#), [add\\_new\\_taxonomy\\_pq\(\)](#), [assign\\_vsearch\\_lca\(\)](#), [assign\\_blastn\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
## Not run:
# /\ The value of threshold must be change for real database (recommend
# value are between 50 and 70).

data_fungi_mini_new <- assign_idtaxa(data_fungi_mini,
  fasta_for_training = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz",
    package = "MiscMetabar"
  ), threshold = 20, behavior = "add_to_phyloseq"
)
```

```

result_idtaxa <- assign_idtaxa(data_fungi_mini,
  fasta_for_training = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz",
    package = "MiscMetabar"
  ), threshold = 20
)

plot(result_idtaxa$idtaxa_raw)

## End(Not run)

```

---

assign\_sintax

*Assign Taxonomy using Sintax algorithm of Vsearch*


---

## Description

Please cite **Vsearch** if you use this function to assign taxonomy.

## Usage

```

assign_sintax(
  physeq = NULL,
  ref_fasta = NULL,
  seq2search = NULL,
  behavior = c("return_matrix", "add_to_phyloseq", "return_cmd"),
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  nproc = 1,
  suffix = "",
  taxa_ranks = c("Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species"),
  min_bootstrap = 0.5,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE,
  verbose = FALSE,
  temporary_fasta_file = "temp.fasta",
  cmd_args = "--sintax_random",
  too_few = "align_start",
  too_many = "drop"
)

```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
ref_fasta	(required) A link to a database in vsearch format The reference database must contain taxonomic information in the header of each sequence in the form of a string starting with ";tax=" and followed by a comma-separated list of up to nine taxonomic identifiers. Each taxonomic identifier must start with an indication of the rank by one of the letters d (for domain) k (kingdom), p (phylum), c (class), o (order), f (family), g (genus), s (species), or t (strain). The letter is followed by

a colon (:), and the name of that rank. Commas and semicolons are not allowed in the name of the rank. Non-ascii characters should be avoided in the names.

Example:

```
\>X80725_S000004313;tax=d:Bacteria,p:Proteobacteria,c:Gammaproteobacteria,o:Enterobacteriales,f:Enterobacteriaceae,g:Enterobacter,12_substr._MG1655
```

seq2search	A DNAStrngSet object of sequences to search for. Replace the physeq object.
behavior	Either "return_matrix" (default), "return_cmd", or "add_to_phyloseq": <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "return_matrix" return a list of two matrix with taxonomic value in the first element of the list and bootstrap value in the second one.</li> <li>• "return_cmd" return the command to run without running it.</li> <li>• "add_to_phyloseq" return a phyloseq object with amended slot @taxtable. Only available if using physeq input and not seq2search input.</li> </ul>
vsearchpath	(default: "vsearch") path to vsearch
clean_pq	(logical, default TRUE) If set to TRUE, empty samples and empty ASV are discarded before clustering.
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use
suffix	(character) The suffix to name the new columns. If set to "" (the default), the taxa_ranks algorithm is used without suffix.
taxa_ranks	A list with the name of the taxonomic rank present in ref_fasta
min_bootstrap	(Float [0:1], default 0.5) Minimum bootstrap value to inform taxonomy. For each bootstrap below the min_bootstrap value, the taxonomy information is set to NA.
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• temporary_fasta_file (default "temp.fasta") : the fasta file from physeq or seq2search</li> <li>• "output_taxo_vs.txt" : see Vsearch Manual for parameter --tabbedout</li> </ul>
verbose	(logical). If TRUE, print additional information.
temporary_fasta_file	The name of a temporary_fasta_file (default "temp.fasta")
cmd_args	Additional arguments passed on to vsearch syntax cmd. By default cmd_args is equal to "--syntax_random" as recommended by <a href="#">Torognes</a> .
too_few	(default value "align_start") see <a href="#">tidyr::separate_wider_delim()</a>
too_many	(default value "drop") see <a href="#">tidyr::separate_wider_delim()</a>

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [vsearch](#).

## Value

See param behavior

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

assign_sintax(data_fungi_mini,
  ref_fasta = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  behavior = "return_cmd"
)

data_fungi_mini_new <- assign_sintax(data_fungi_mini,
  ref_fasta = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  behavior = "add_to_phyloseq"
)

assignation_results <- assign_sintax(data_fungi_mini,
  ref_fasta = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz", package = "MiscMetabar")
)

left_join(
  tidyr::pivot_longer(assignation_results$taxo_value, -taxa_names),
  tidyr::pivot_longer(assignation_results$taxo_bootstrap, -taxa_names),
  by = join_by(taxa_names, name),
  suffix = c("rank", "bootstrap")
) |>
mutate(name = factor(name,
  levels = c(
    "Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class",
    "Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species"
  )
)) |>
# mutate(valuerank = forcats::fct_reorder(valuerank,
#   as.integer(name), .desc = TRUE)) |>
ggplot(aes(valuebootstrap,
  valuerank,
  fill = name
)) +
geom_jitter(alpha = 0.8, aes(color = name)) +
geom_boxplot(alpha = 0.3)

```

---

assign\_vsearch\_lca      *Assign taxonomy using LCA*

---

**Description**

Please cite **Vsearch** and **stampa** if you use this function to assign taxonomy.

1. If `top_hits_only` is `TRUE`, the algorithm is the one of `stampa`.
2. If `top_hits_only` is `FALSE` and `vote_algorithm` is `NULL`, you need to carefully define `maxaccept`, `id` and `lca_cutoff` parameters. The algorithm is internal to `vsearch` using the `lcaout` output.
3. If `top_hits_only` is `FALSE` and `vote_algorithm` is not `NULL`, conflict among the list of taxonomic assignments is resolve using the function `resolve_vector_ranks()`. The possible values for `vote_algorithm` are "consensus", "rel\_majority", "abs\_majority" and "unanimity". See `resolve_vector_ranks()` for more details.

## Usage

```
assign_vsearch_lca(
  physeq = NULL,
  ref_fasta = NULL,
  seq2search = NULL,
  behavior = c("return_matrix", "add_to_phyloseq", "return_cmd"),
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  taxa_ranks = c("Kingdom", "Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species"),
  nproc = 1,
  suffix = "_sintax",
  id = 0.5,
  lca_cutoff = 1,
  maxrejects = 32,
  top_hits_only = TRUE,
  maxaccepts = 0,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  temporary_fasta_file = "temp.fasta",
  cmd_args = "",
  too_few = "align_start",
  vote_algorithm = NULL,
  nb_voting = NULL,
  strict = FALSE,
  nb_agree_threshold = 1,
  preference_index = NULL,
  collapse_string = "/",
  replace_collapsed_rank_by_NA = TRUE,
  simplify_taxo = TRUE,
  keep_vsearch_score = FALSE
)
```

## Arguments

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <code>phyloseq-class</code> object obtained using the <code>phyloseq</code> package.
<code>ref_fasta</code>	(required) A link to a database in <code>vsearch</code> format The reference database must contain taxonomic information in the header of each sequence in the form of a string starting with ";tax=" and followed by a comma-separated list of up to nine taxonomic identifiers. Each taxonomic identifier must start with an indication of

the rank by one of the letters d (for domain) k (kingdom), p (phylum), c (class), o (order), f (family), g (genus), s (species), or t (strain). The letter is followed by a colon (:) and the name of that rank. Commas and semicolons are not allowed in the name of the rank. Non-ascii characters should be avoided in the names.

Example:

```
\>X80725_S000004313;tax=d:Bacteria,p:Proteobacteria,c:Gammaproteobacteria,o:Enterobacteriales,f:Enterobacteriaceae,g:Escherichia,t:12_substr._MG1655
```

seq2search	A DNAStrngSet object of sequences to search for. Replace the physeq object.
behavior	Either "return_matrix" (default), "return_cmd", or "add_to_phyloseq": <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "return_matrix" return a list of two matrix with taxonomic value in the first element of the list and bootstrap value in the second one.</li> <li>• "return_cmd" return the command to run without running it.</li> <li>• "add_to_phyloseq" return a phyloseq object with amended slot @taxtable. Only available if using physeq input and not seq2search input.</li> </ul>
vsearchpath	(default: "vsearch") path to vsearch
clean_pq	(logical, default TRUE) If set to TRUE, empty samples and empty ASV are discarded before clustering.
taxa_ranks	A list with the name of the taxonomic rank present in ref_fasta
nproc	(int, default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use
suffix	(character) The suffix to name the new columns. If set to "" (the default), the taxa_ranks algorithm is used without suffix.
id	(Float [0:1] default 0.5). Default value is based on <b>stampa</b> . See Vsearch Manual for parameter --id
lca_cutoff	(int, default 1). Fraction of matching hits required for the last common ancestor (LCA) output. For example, a value of 0.9 imply that if less than 10% of assigned species are not congruent the taxonomy is filled. Default value is based on <b>stampa</b> . See Vsearch Manual for parameter --lca_cutoff Text from vsearch manual : "Adjust the fraction of matching hits required for the last common ancestor (LCA) output with the -lcaout option during searches. The default value is 1.0 which requires all hits to match at each taxonomic rank for that rank to be included. If a lower cutoff value is used, e.g. 0.95, a small fraction of non-matching hits are allowed while that rank will still be reported. The argument to this option must be larger than 0.5, but not larger than 1.0"
maxrejects	(int, default: 32) Maximum number of non-matching target sequences to consider before stopping the search for a given query. Default value is based on <b>stampa</b> See Vsearch Manual for parameter --maxrejects.
top_hits_only	(Logical, default TRUE) Only the top hits with an equally high percentage of identity between the query and database sequence sets are written to the output. If you set top_hits_only you may need to set a lower maxaccepts and/or lca_cutoff. Default value is based on <b>stampa</b> See Vsearch Manual for parameter --top_hits_only
maxaccepts	(int, default: 0) Default value is based on <b>stampa</b> . Maximum number of matching target sequences to accept before stopping the search for a given query. See Vsearch Manual for parameter --maxaccepts



keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>temporary_fasta_file (default "temp.fasta") : the fasta file from physeq or seq2search</li> <li>"out_lca.txt" : see Vsearch Manual for parameter <code>-lcaout</code></li> <li>"userout.txt" : see Vsearch Manual for parameter <code>-userout</code></li> </ul>
verbose	(logical). If TRUE, print additional information.
temporary_fasta_file	Name of the temporary fasta file. Only useful with <code>keep_temporary_files = TRUE</code> .
cmd_args	Additional arguments passed on to vsearch usearch_global cmd.
too_few	(default value "align_start") see <code>tidyr::separate_wider_delim()</code>
vote_algorithm	(default NULL) the method to vote among "consensus", "rel_majority", "abs_majority" and "unanimity". See <code>resolve_vector_ranks()</code> for more details.
nb_voting	(Int, default NULL). The number of taxa to keep before apply a vote to resolve conflict. If NULL all taxa passing the filters ( <code>min_id</code> , <code>min_bit_score</code> , <code>min_cover</code> and <code>min_e_value</code> ) are selected.
strict	(Logical, default FALSE). See <code>resolve_vector_ranks()</code> for more details.
nb_agree_threshold	See <code>resolve_vector_ranks()</code> for more details.
preference_index	See <code>resolve_vector_ranks()</code> for more details.
collapse_string	See <code>resolve_vector_ranks()</code> for more details.
replace_collapsed_rank_by_NA	(Logical, default TRUE) See <code>resolve_vector_ranks()</code> for more details.
simplify_taxo	(logical default TRUE). Do we apply the function <code>simplify_taxo()</code> to the phyloseq object?
keep_vsearch_score	(Logical, default FALSE). If TRUE, the mean and sd of id score are stored in the <code>tax_table</code> .

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [vsearch](#) and [stampa](#)

**Value**

See param behavior

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[assign\\_sintax\(\)](#), [add\\_new\\_taxonomy\\_pq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
data_fungi_mini_new <- assign_vsearch_lca(data_fungi_mini,
  ref_fasta = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  lca_cutoff = 0.9, behavior = "add_to_phyloseq"
)

data_fungi_mini_new2 <- assign_vsearch_lca(data_fungi_mini,
  ref_fasta = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  id = 0.8, behavior = "add_to_phyloseq", top_hits_only = FALSE
)

data_fungi_mini_new3 <- assign_vsearch_lca(data_fungi_mini,
  ref_fasta = system.file("extdata", "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  id = 0.5, behavior = "add_to_phyloseq", top_hits_only = FALSE, vote_algorithm = "rel_majority"
)
```

---

as\_binary\_otu\_table *Transform the otu\_table of a [phyloseq-class](#) object into a [phyloseq-class](#) object with a binary otu\_table.*

---

## Description

Useful to test if the results are not biased by sequences bias that appended during PCR or NGS pipeline.

## Usage

```
as_binary_otu_table(physeq, min_number = 1)
```

## Arguments

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
min\_number (int) the minimum number of sequences to put a 1 in the OTU table.

## Value

A physeq object with only 0/1 in the OTU table

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## Examples

```
data(enterotype)
enterotype_bin <- as_binary_otu_table(enterotype)
```

---

 biplot\_pq

*Visualization of two samples for comparison*


---

## Description

Graphical representation of distribution of taxa across two samples.

## Usage

```
biplot_pq(
  physeq,
  fact = NULL,
  merge_sample_by = NULL,
  rarefy_after_merging = FALSE,
  inverse_side = FALSE,
  left_name = NULL,
  left_name_col = "#4B3E1E",
  left_fill = "#4B3E1E",
  left_col = "#f3f2d9",
  right_name = NULL,
  right_name_col = "#1d2949",
  right_fill = "#1d2949",
  right_col = "#1d2949",
  log10trans = TRUE,
  nudge_y = c(0.3, 0.3),
  geom_label = FALSE,
  text_size = 3,
  size_names = 5,
  y_names = NA,
  ylim_modif = c(1, 1),
  nb_samples_info = TRUE,
  plotly_version = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

**physeq** (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

**fact** (default: NULL) Name of the factor in `physeq@sam_data`. If left to NULL use the `left_name` and `right_name` parameter as modality.

**merge\_sample\_by** (default: NULL) if not NULL samples of `physeq` are merged using the vector set by `merge_sample_by`. This merging used the [merge\\_samples2\(\)](#). In the case of [biplot\\_pq\(\)](#) this must be a factor with two levels only.

**rarefy\_after\_merging** Rarefy each sample after merging by the modalities `merge_sample_by`

<code>inverse_side</code>	Inverse the side (put the right modality in the left side).
<code>left_name</code>	Name fo the left sample.
<code>left_name_col</code>	Color for the left name
<code>left_fill</code>	Fill fo the left sample.
<code>left_col</code>	Color fo the left sample.
<code>right_name</code>	Name fo the right sample.
<code>right_name_col</code>	Color for the right name
<code>right_fill</code>	Fill fo the right sample.
<code>right_col</code>	Color fo the right sample.
<code>log10trans</code>	(logical) Does abundancy is log10 transformed ?
<code>nudge_y</code>	A parameter to control the y position of abundancy values. If a vector of two values are set. The first value is for the left side. and the second value for the right one. If one value is set, this value is used for both side.
<code>geom_label</code>	(default: FALSE, logical) if TRUE use the <code>ggplot2::geom_label()</code> function instead of <code>ggplot2::geom_text()</code> to indicate the numbers of sequences.
<code>text_size</code>	size for the number of sequences
<code>size_names</code>	size for the names of the 2 samples
<code>y_names</code>	y position for the names of the 2 samples. If NA (default), computed using the maximum abundances values.
<code>ylim_modif</code>	vector of two values. Modificator (by a multiplication) of ylim. If one value is set, this value is used for both limits.
<code>nb_samples_info</code>	(default: TRUE, logical) if TRUE and <code>merge_sample_by</code> is set, add the number of samples merged for both levels.
<code>plotly_version</code>	If TRUE, use <code>plotly::ggplotly()</code> to return a interactive ggplot.
<code>...</code>	Other arguments for the ggplot function

**Value**

A plot

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
data_fungi_2Height <- subset_samples(data_fungi_mini, Height %in% c("Low", "High"))
biplot_pq(data_fungi_2Height, "Height", merge_sample_by = "Height")
```

---

blast_pq	<i>Blast all sequence of refseq slot of a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object against a custom database.</i>
----------	--

---

### Description

Use the blast software.

### Usage

```
blast_pq(
  physeq,
  fasta_for_db = NULL,
  database = NULL,
  blastpath = NULL,
  id_cut = 90,
  bit_score_cut = 50,
  min_cover_cut = 50,
  e_value_cut = 1e-30,
  unique_per_seq = FALSE,
  score_filter = TRUE,
  nproc = 1,
  args_makedb = NULL,
  args_blastn = NULL,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fasta_for_db	Either a DNASTringSet object or a path to a fasta file to make the blast database.
database	path to a blast database
blastpath	path to blast program
id_cut	(default: 90) cut of in identity percent to keep result
bit_score_cut	(default: 50) cut of in bit score to keep result The higher the bit-score, the better the sequence similarity. The bit-score is the requires size of a sequence database in which the current match could be found just by chance. The bit-score is a log2 scaled and normalized raw-score. Each increase by one doubles the required database size (2bit-score).
min_cover_cut	(default: 50) cut of in query cover (%) to keep result
e_value_cut	(default: 1e-30) cut of in e-value (%) to keep result The BLAST E-value is the number of expected hits of similar quality (score) that could be found just by chance.
unique_per_seq	(logical, default FALSE) if TRUE only return the better match (higher <b>bit score</b> ) for each sequence

score_filter	(logical, default TRUE) does results are filter by score? If FALSE, id_cut, bit_score_cut, e_value_cut and min_cover_cut are ignored
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for blast (args -num_threads for blastn command)
args_makedb	Additional arguments passed on to makeblastdb command
args_blastn	Additional arguments passed on to blastn command
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• db.fasta (refseq transformed into a database)</li> <li>• dbase list of files (output of blastn)</li> <li>• blast_result.txt the summary result of blastn using -outfmt "6 qseqid qlen sseqid slen length p</li> <li>• temp.fasta if fasta_for_db was a DNASTringSet object.</li> </ul>

**Value**

a blast table

**See Also**

[blast\\_to\\_phyloseq\(\)](#) to use refseq slot as a database

---

blast\_to\_derep

*Blast some sequence against sequences from of a [derep-class](#) object.*


---

**Description**

Use the blast software.

**Usage**

```
blast_to_derep(
  derep,
  seq2search,
  blastpath = NULL,
  id_cut = 90,
  bit_score_cut = 50,
  min_cover_cut = 50,
  e_value_cut = 1e-30,
  unique_per_seq = FALSE,
  score_filter = FALSE,
  list_no_output_query = FALSE,
  min_length_seq = 200,
  args_makedb = NULL,
  args_blastn = NULL,
  nproc = 1,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

derep	The result of <code>dada2::derepFastq()</code> . A list of derep-class object.
seq2search	(required) path to a fasta file defining the sequences you want to blast against the taxa (ASV, OTU) sequences from the physeq object.
blastpath	path to blast program
id_cut	(default: 90) cut of in identity percent to keep result
bit_score_cut	(default: 50) cut of in bit score to keep result The higher the bit-score, the better the sequence similarity. The bit-score is the requires size of a sequence database in which the current match could be found just by chance. The bit-score is a log2 scaled and normalized raw-score. Each increase by one doubles the required database size (2bit-score).
min_cover_cut	(default: 50) cut of in query cover (%) to keep result
e_value_cut	(default: 1e-30) cut of in e-value (%) to keep result The BLAST E-value is the number of expected hits of similar quality (score) that could be found just by chance.
unique_per_seq	(logical, default FALSE) if TRUE only return the better match (higher <b>bit score</b> ) for each sequence
score_filter	(logical, default TRUE) does results are filter by score? If FALSE, <code>id_cut</code> , <code>bit_score_cut</code> , <code>e_value_cut</code> and <code>min_cover_cut</code> are ignored
list_no_output_query	(logical) does the result table include query sequences for which blastn does not find any correspondence?
min_length_seq	(default: 200) Removed sequences with less than <code>min_length_seq</code> from derep before blast. Set to 0 to discard filtering sequences by length.
args_makedb	Additional arguments passed on to <code>makeblastdb</code> command
args_blastn	Additional arguments passed on to <code>blastn</code> command
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for blast ( <code>args -num_threads</code> for <code>blastn</code> command)
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>db.fasta</code> (refseq transformed into a database)</li> <li>• <code>dbase</code> list of files (output of <code>blastn</code>)</li> <li>• <code>blast_result.txt</code> the summary result of <code>blastn</code> using <code>-outfmt "6 qseqid qlen sseqid slen length p</code></li> </ul>

**Value**

A blast table

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[blast\\_pq\(\)](#) to use refseq slot as query sequences against un custom database and [blast\\_to\\_phyloseq\(\)](#) to use refseq slot as a database

---

blast\_to\_phyloseq      *Blast some sequence against refseq slot of a [phyloseq-class](#) object.*

---

## Description

Use the blast software.

## Usage

```
blast_to_phyloseq(
  physeq,
  seq2search,
  blastpath = NULL,
  id_cut = 90,
  bit_score_cut = 50,
  min_cover_cut = 50,
  e_value_cut = 1e-30,
  unique_per_seq = FALSE,
  score_filter = TRUE,
  list_no_output_query = FALSE,
  args_makedb = NULL,
  args_blastn = NULL,
  nproc = 1,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
seq2search	(required) path to a fasta file defining the sequences you want to blast against the taxa (ASV, OTU) sequences from the physeq object.
blastpath	path to blast program
id_cut	(default: 90) cut of in identity percent to keep result
bit_score_cut	(default: 50) cut of in bit score to keep result The higher the bit-score, the better the sequence similarity. The bit-score is the requires size of a sequence database in which the current match could be found just by chance. The bit-score is a log2 scaled and normalized raw-score. Each increase by one doubles the required database size (2bit-score).
min_cover_cut	(default: 50) cut of in query cover (%) to keep result
e_value_cut	(default: 1e-30) cut of in e-value (%) to keep result The BLAST E-value is the number of expected hits of similar quality (score) that could be found just by chance.
unique_per_seq	(logical, default FALSE) if TRUE only return the better match (higher <b>bit score</b> ) for each sequence



score_filter	(logical, default TRUE) does results are filter by score? If FALSE, id_cut, bit_score_cut, e_value_cut and min_cover_cut are ignored
list_no_output_query	(logical) does the result table include query sequences for which blastn does not find any correspondence?
args_makedb	Additional arguments passed on to makeblastdb command
args_blastn	Additional arguments passed on to blastn command
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for blast (args -num_threads for blastn command)
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• db.fasta (refseq transformed into a database)</li> <li>• dbase list of files (output of blastn)</li> <li>• blast_result.txt the summary result of blastn using -outfmt "6 qseqid qlen sseqid slen length p</li> </ul>

**Value**

the blast table

**See Also**

[blast\\_pq\(\)](#) to use refseq slot as query sequences against un custom database.

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
blastpath <- "...YOUR_PATH_TO_BLAST..."
blast_to_phyloseq(data_fungi,
  seq2search = system.file("extdata", "ex.fasta",
    package = "MiscMetabar", mustWork = TRUE
  ),
  blastpath = blastpath
)

## End(Not run)
```

---

build\_phytree\_pq

*Build phylogenetic trees from refseq slot of a phyloseq object*

---

**Description**

This function build tree phylogenetic tree and if nb\_bootstrap is set, it build also the 3 corresponding bootstrapped tree.

Default parameters are based on [doi:10.12688/f1000research.8986.2](https://doi.org/10.12688/f1000research.8986.2) and phangorn vignette [Estimating phylogenetic trees with phangorn](#). You should understand your data, especially the markers, before using this function.

Note that phylogenetic reconstruction with markers used for metabarcoding are not robust. You must verify the robustness of your phylogenetic tree using taxonomic classification (see vignette [Tree visualization](#)) and bootstrap or multi-tree visualization

### Usage

```
build_phytree_pq(
  physeq,
  nb_bootstrap = 0,
  model = "GTR",
  optInv = TRUE,
  optGamma = TRUE,
  rearrangement = "NNI",
  control = phangorn::pml.control(trace = 0),
  optNni = TRUE,
  multicore = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
nb_bootstrap	(default 0): If a positive number is set, the function also build 3 bootstrapped trees using nb_bootstrap bootstrap samples
model	allows to choose an amino acid models or nucleotide model, see <a href="#">phangorn::optim.pml()</a> for more details
optInv	Logical value indicating whether topology gets optimized (NNI). See <a href="#">phangorn::optim.pml()</a> for more details
optGamma	Logical value indicating whether gamma rate parameter gets optimized. See <a href="#">phangorn::optim.pml()</a> for more details
rearrangement	type of tree tree rearrangements to perform, one of "NNI", "stochastic" or "ratchet" see <a href="#">phangorn::optim.pml()</a> for more details
control	A list of parameters for controlling the fitting process. see <a href="#">phangorn::optim.pml()</a> for more details
optNni	Logical value indicating whether topology gets optimized (NNI). see <a href="#">phangorn::optim.pml()</a> for more details
multicore	(logical) whether models should estimated in parallel. see <a href="#">phangorn::bootstrap.pml()</a> for more details
...	Other params for be passed on to <a href="#">phangorn::optim.pml()</a> function

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to phangorn package if you use this function.

### Value

A list of phylogenetic tree

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("phangorn")) {
  set.seed(22)
  df <- subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi_mini, taxa_sums(data_fungi_mini) > 9000)
  df_tree <- build_phytree_pq(df, nb_bootstrap = 2)
  plot(df_tree$UPGMA)
  phangorn::plotBS(df_tree$UPGMA, df_tree$UPGMA_bs, main = "UPGMA")
  plot(df_tree$NJ, "unrooted")
  plot(df_tree$ML)

  phangorn::plotBS(df_tree$ML$tree, df_tree$ML_bs, p = 20, frame = "circle")
  phangorn::plotBS(
    df_tree$ML$tree,
    df_tree$ML_bs,
    p = 20,
    frame = "circle",
    method = "TBE"
  )
  plot(phangorn::consensusNet(df_tree$ML_bs))
  plot(phangorn::consensusNet(df_tree$NJ_bs))
  ps_tree <- merge_phyloseq(df, df_tree$ML$tree)
}
```

---

chimera\_detection\_vs *Detect for chimera taxa using R*[href=https://github.com/torognes/vsearchvsearch](https://github.com/torognes/vsearchvsearch)

---

**Description**

Use the VSEARCH software.

**Usage**

```
chimera_detection_vs(
  seq2search,
  nb_seq,
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  abskew = 2,
  min_seq_length = 100,
  vsearch_args = "--fasta_width 0",
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

seq2search	(required) a list of DNA sequences coercible by function <code>Biostrings::DNASTringSet()</code>
nb_seq	(required) a numeric vector giving the number of sequences for each DNA sequences
vsearchpath	(default: "vsearch") path to vsearch
abskew	(int, default 2) The abundance skew is used to distinguish in a three way alignment which sequence is the chimera and which are the parents. The assumption is that chimeras appear later in the PCR amplification process and are therefore less abundant than their parents. The default value is 2.0, which means that the parents should be at least 2 times more abundant than their chimera. Any positive value equal or greater than 1.0 can be used.
min_seq_length	(int, default 100) Minimum length of sequences to be part of the analysis
vsearch_args	(default "--fasta_width 0") A list of other args for vsearch command
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files ? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• non_chimeras.fasta</li> <li>• chimeras.fasta</li> <li>• borderline.fasta</li> </ul>

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make [vsearch](#).

**Value**

A list of 3 including non-chimera taxa (`$non_chimera`), chimera taxa (`$chimera`) and borderline taxa (`$borderline`)

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[chimera\\_removal\\_vs\(\)](#), [dada2::removeBimeraDenovo\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
chimera_detection_vs(
  seq2search = data_fungi@refseq,
  nb_seq = taxa_sums(data_fungi)
)
```

---

chimera\_removal\_vs      *Search for a list of sequence in an object to remove chimera taxa using*  
*Rhref<https://github.com/torognes/vsearch/vsearch>*

---

### Description

Use the VSEARCH software.

### Usage

```
chimera_removal_vs(object, type = "Discard_only_chim", clean_pq = FALSE, ...)
```

### Arguments

object	(required) A phyloseq-class object or one of dada, derep, data.frame or list coercible to sequences table using the function <code>dada2::makeSequenceTable()</code>
type	(default "Discard_only_chim"). The type define the type of filtering. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Discard_only_chim" will only discard taxa classify as chimera by vsearch</li> <li>• "Select_only_non_chim" will only select taxa classify as non-chimera by vsearch(after filtering taxa based on their sequence length by the parameter <code>min_seq_length</code> from the <code>chimera_detection_vs()</code> function)</li> <li>• "Select_only_chim" will only select taxa classify as chimera by vsearch (after filtering taxa based on their sequence length by the parameter <code>min_seq_length</code> from the <code>chimera_detection_vs()</code> function)</li> </ul>
clean_pq	(logical; default FALSE) If TRUE, return the phyloseq object after cleaning using the default parameter of <code>clean_pq()</code> function.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <code>chimera_detection_vs()</code> function

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make [vsearch](#).

### Value

- I/ a sequences tables if object is of class dada, derep, data.frame or list.
- II/ a phyloseq object without (or with if type = 'Select\_only\_chim') chimeric taxa

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[chimera\\_detection\\_vs\(\)](#), [dada2::removeBimeraDenovo\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
data_fungi_nochim <- chimera_removal_vs(data_fungi)
data_fungi_nochim_16 <- chimera_removal_vs(data_fungi,
  abskew = 16,
  min_seq_length = 10
)
data_fungi_nochim2 <-
  chimera_removal_vs(data_fungi, type = "Select_only_non_chim")
data_fungi_chimera <-
  chimera_removal_vs(data_fungi, type = "Select_only_chim")
```

---

circle\_pq

*Plot OTU circle for [phyloseq-class](#) object*

---

## Description

Graphical representation of distribution of taxa across a factor.

## Usage

```
circle_pq(
  physeq = NULL,
  fact = NULL,
  taxa = "Order",
  nproc = 1,
  add_nb_seq = TRUE,
  rarefy = FALSE,
  min_prop_tax = 0.01,
  min_prop_mod = 0.1,
  gap_degree = NULL,
  start_degree = NULL,
  row_col = NULL,
  grid_col = NULL,
  log10trans = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam_data.
taxa	(default: 'Order') Name of the taxonomic rank of interest
nproc	(default 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for parallelization

add_nb_seq	(default: TRUE) Represent the number of sequences or the number of OTUs (add_nb_seq = FALSE)
rarefy	(logical) Does each samples modalities need to be rarefy in order to compare them with the same amount of sequences?
min_prop_tax	(default: 0.01) The minimum proportion for taxa to be plotted
min_prop_mod	(default: 0.1) The minimum proportion for modalities to be plotted
gap_degree	Gap between two neighbour sectors. It can be a single value or a vector. If it is a vector, the first value corresponds to the gap after the first sector.
start_degree	The starting degree from which the circle begins to draw. Note this degree is measured in the standard polar coordinate which means it is always reverse-clockwise.
row_col	Color vector for row
grid_col	Grid colors which correspond to sectors. The length of the vector should be either 1 or the number of sectors. It's preferred that grid_col is a named vector of which names correspond to sectors. If it is not a named vector, the order of grid_col corresponds to order of sectors.
log10trans	(logical) Should sequence be log10 transformed (more precisely by $\log_{10}(1+x)$ )?
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">chordDiagram</a> or <a href="#">circos.par</a>

**Value**

A [chordDiagram](#) plot representing the distribution of OTUs or sequences in the different modalities of the factor fact

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[chordDiagram](#)

[circos.par](#)

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("pbapply")) {
  data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
  GP <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, GlobalPatterns@tax_table[, 1] == "Archaea")
  circle_pq(GP, "SampleType")
  circle_pq(GP, "SampleType", add_nb_seq = FALSE)
  circle_pq(GP, "SampleType", taxa = "Class")
}
```

---

clean\_pq

*Clean phyloseq object by removing empty samples and taxa*


---

### Description

In addition, this function check for discrepancy (and rename) between (i) taxa names in refseq, taxonomy table and otu\_table and between (ii) sample names in sam\_data and otu\_table.

### Usage

```
clean_pq(
  physeq,
  remove_empty_samples = TRUE,
  remove_empty_taxa = TRUE,
  clean_samples_names = TRUE,
  silent = FALSE,
  verbose = FALSE,
  force_taxa_as_columns = FALSE,
  force_taxa_as_rows = FALSE,
  reorder_taxa = FALSE,
  rename_taxa = FALSE,
  simplify_taxo = FALSE,
  prefix_taxa_names = "_Taxa"
)
```

### Arguments

**physeq** (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

**remove\_empty\_samples** (logical) Do you want to remove samples without sequences (this is done after removing empty taxa)

**remove\_empty\_taxa** (logical) Do you want to remove taxa without sequences (this is done before removing empty samples)

**clean\_samples\_names** (logical) Do you want to clean samples names?

**silent** (logical) If true, no message are printing.

**verbose** (logical) Additional informations in the message the verbose parameter overwrite the silent parameter.

**force\_taxa\_as\_columns** (logical) If true, if the taxa are rows transpose the otu\_table and set taxa\_are\_rows to false

**force\_taxa\_as\_rows** (logical) If true, if the taxa are columns transpose the otu\_table and set taxa\_are\_rows to true



reorder_taxa	(logical) if TRUE the otu_table is ordered by the number of sequences of taxa (ASV, OTU) in descending order. Default to FALSE.
rename_taxa	(logical) if TRUE, taxa (ASV, OTU) are renamed by their position in the OTU_table and prefix_taxa_names param (by default: Taxa_1, Taxa_2, ...). Default to FALSE. If rename taxa (ASV, OTU) is true, the taxa (ASV, OTU) names in verbose information can be misleading.
simplify_taxo	(logical) if TRUE, correct the taxonomy_table using the MiscMetabar::simplify_taxo() function
prefix_taxa_names	(default "Taxa_"): the prefix of taxa names (eg. "ASV_" or "OTU_")

**Value**

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

---

compare_pairs_pq	<i>Compare samples in pairs using diversity and number of ASV including shared ASV.</i>
------------------	---

---

**Description**

For the moment refseq slot need to be not Null.

**Usage**

```
compare_pairs_pq(
  physeq = NULL,
  bifactor = NULL,
  modality = NULL,
  merge_sample_by = NULL,
  nb_min_seq = 0,
  veg_index = "shannon",
  na_remove = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
bifactor	(required) a factor (present in the sam_data slot of the physeq object) presenting the pair names
modality	the name of the column in the sam_data slot of the physeq object to split samples by pairs

merge_sample_by	a vector to determine which samples to merge using the <code>merge_samples2()</code> function. Need to be in <code>physeq@sam_data</code>
nb_min_seq	minimum number of sequences per sample to count the ASV/OTU
veg_index	(default: "shannon") index for the <code>vegan::diversity</code> function
na_remove	(logical, default TRUE) If set to TRUE, remove samples with NA in the variables set in <code>bifactor</code> , <code>modality</code> and <code>merge_sample_by</code> . NA in variables are well managed even if <code>na_remove = FALSE</code> , so <code>na_remove</code> may be useless.

**Value**

A tibble with information about the number of shared ASV, shared number of sequences and diversity

**Examples**

```
data_fungi_low_high <- subset_samples(data_fungi, Height %in% c("Low", "High"))
compare_pairs_pq(data_fungi_low_high, bifactor = "Height", merge_sample_by = "Height")
compare_pairs_pq(data_fungi_low_high,
  bifactor = "Height",
  merge_sample_by = "Height", modality = "Time"
)
```

---

count\_seq

*Count sequences in fasta or fastq file*

---

**Description**

Use `grep` to count the number of line with only one '+' (fastq, fastq.gz) or lines starting with a '>' (fasta) to count sequences.

**Usage**

```
count_seq(file_path = NULL, folder_path = NULL, pattern = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

file_path	The path to a fasta, fastq or fastq.gz file
folder_path	The path to a folder with fasta, fastq or fastq.gz files
pattern	A pattern to filter files in a folder. E.g. <i>R2</i>

**Value**

the number of sequences

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
count_seq(file_path = system.file(
  "extdata",
  "ex.fasta",
  package = "MiscMetabar",
  mustWork = TRUE
))
count_seq(
  folder_path = system.file("extdata", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  pattern = "*.fasta"
)
```

---

```
cutadapt_remove_primers
```

*Remove primers using R* [hrefhttps://github.com/marcelm/cutadapt/cutadapt](https://github.com/marcelm/cutadapt/cutadapt)

---

**Description**

You need to install **Cutadapt**. See also <https://github.com/VascoElbrecht/JAMP/blob/master/JAMP/R/Cutadapt.R> for another call to cutadapt from R

**Usage**

```
cutadapt_remove_primers(
  path_to_fastq,
  primer_fw = NULL,
  primer_rev = NULL,
  folder_output = "wo_primers",
  nproc = 1,
  pattern = "fastq.gz",
  pattern_R1 = "_R1",
  pattern_R2 = "_R2",
  nb_files = Inf,
  cmd_is_run = TRUE,
  return_file_path = FALSE,
  args_before_cutadapt =
    "source ~/miniconda3/etc/profile.d/conda.sh && conda activate cutadaptenv && "
)
```

**Arguments**

path_to_fastq	(Required) A path to a folder with fastq files. See <a href="#">list_fastq_files()</a> for help.
primer_fw	(Required, String) The forward primer DNA sequence.
primer_rev	(String) The reverse primer DNA sequence.
folder_output	The path to a folder for output files

**nproc** (default 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for the clustering  
**pattern** a pattern to filter files (passed on to list.files function).  
**pattern\_R1** a pattern to filter R1 files (default "R1")  
**pattern\_R2** a pattern to filter R2 files (default "R2")  
**nb\_files** the number of fastq files to list (default FALSE)  
**cmd\_is\_run** (logical, default TRUE) Do the cutadapt command is run. If set to FALSE, the only effect of the function is to return a list of command to manually run in a terminal.  
**return\_file\_path** (logical, default FALSE) If true, the function return the path of the output folder (param folder\_output). Useful in targets workflow  
**args\_before\_cutadapt** (String) A one line bash command to run before to run cutadapt. For examples, "source ~/miniconda3/etc/profile.d/conda.sh && conda activate cutadaptenv &&" allow to bypass the conda init which asks to restart the shell

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite cutadapt ([doi:10.14806/ej.17.1.200](https://doi.org/10.14806/ej.17.1.200)).

## Value

a list of command or if return\_file\_path is TRUE, the path to the output folder

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## Examples

```

## Not run:
cutadapt_remove_primers(system.file("extdata", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  "TTC",
  "GAA",
  folder_output = tempdir()
)

cutadapt_remove_primers(
  system.file("extdata",
    package = "dada2"
  ),
  pattern_R1 = "F.fastq.gz",
  pattern_R2 = "R.fastq.gz",
  primer_fw = "TTC",
  primer_rev = "GAA",
  folder_output = tempdir()
)

```

```
cutadapt_remove_primers(  
  system.file("extdata",  
    package = "dada2"  
  ),  
  pattern_R1 = "F.fastq.gz",  
  primer_fw = "TTC",  
  folder_output = tempdir(),  
  cmd_is_run = FALSE  
)  
  
unlink(tempdir(), recursive = TRUE)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

data\_fungi

*Fungal OTU in phyloseq format*

---

### Description

Fungal OTU in phyloseq format

### Usage

```
data(data_fungi)
```

### Format

A physeq object containing 1420 taxa with references sequences described by 14 taxonomic ranks and 185 samples described by 7 sample variables:

- *X*: the name of the fastq-file
- *Sample\_names*: the names of ... the samples
- *Treename*: the name of an tree
- *Sample\_id*: identifier for each sample
- *Height*: height of the sample in the tree
- *Diameter*: diameter of the trunk
- *Time*: time since the dead of the tree

---

data_fungi_mini	<i>Fungal OTU in phyloseq format</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------

---

### Description

It is a subset of the data\_fungi dataset including only Basidiomycota with more than 5000 sequences.

### Usage

```
data(data_fungi_mini)
```

```
data(data_fungi_mini)
```

### Format

A physeq object containing 45 taxa with references sequences described by 14 taxonomic ranks and 137 samples described by 7 sample variables:

- *X*: the name of the fastq-file
- *Sample\_names*: the names of ... the samples
- *Treename*: the name of an tree
- *Sample\_id*: identifier for each sample
- *Height*: height of the sample in the tree
- *Diameter*: diameter of the trunk
- *Time*: time since the dead of the tree

A physeq object containing 45 taxa with references sequences described by 14 taxonomic ranks and 137 samples described by 7 sample variables:

- *X*: the name of the fastq-file
- *Sample\_names*: the names of ... the samples
- *Treename*: the name of an tree
- *Sample\_id*: identifier for each sample
- *Height*: height of the sample in the tree
- *Diameter*: diameter of the trunk
- *Time*: time since the dead of the tree

### Details

Obtain using `data_fungi_mini <- subset_taxa(data_fungi, Phylum == "Basidiomycota")` and then `data_fungi_mini <- subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi_mini, colSums(data_fungi_mini@otu_table) > 5000)`

---

data\_fungi\_sp\_known    *Fungal OTU in phyloseq format*

---

### Description

It is a subset of the data\_fungi dataset including only taxa with information at the species level

### Usage

```
data(data_fungi_sp_known)
```

### Format

A physeq object containing 651 taxa with references sequences described by 14 taxonomic ranks and 185 samples described by 7 sample variables:

- *X*: the name of the fastq-file
- *Sample\_names*: the names of ... the samples
- *Treename*: the name of an tree
- *Sample\_id*: identifier for each sample
- *Height*: height of the sample in the tree
- *Diameter*: diameter of the trunk
- *Time*: time since the dead of the tree

### Details

Obtain using `data_fungi_sp_known <- subset_taxa(data_fungi, !is.na(data_fungi@tax_table[, "Species"]))`

---

diff\_fct\_diff\_class    *Compute different functions for different class of vector.*

---

### Description

Mainly an internal function useful in "sapply(..., tapply)" methods

### Usage

```
diff_fct_diff_class(  
  x,  
  numeric_fonction = mean,  
  logical_method = "TRUE_if_one",  
  character_method = "unique_or_na",  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

**x** : a vector  
**numeric\_fonction** : a function for numeric vector. For ex. sum or mean  
**logical\_method** : A method for logical vector. One of :
 

- TRUE\_if\_one (default)
- NA\_if\_not\_all\_TRUE
- FALSE\_if\_not\_all\_TRUE

**character\_method** : A method for character vector (and factor). One of :
 

- unique\_or\_na (default)
- more\_frequent
- more\_frequent\_without\_equality

**...** Additional arguments passed on to the numeric function (ex. na.rm=TRUE)

**Value**

a single value

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

diff_fct_diff_class(
  data_fungi@sam_data$Sample_id,
  numeric_fonction = sum,
  na.rm = TRUE
)
diff_fct_diff_class(
  data_fungi@sam_data$Time,
  numeric_fonction = mean,
  na.rm = TRUE
)
diff_fct_diff_class(
  data_fungi@sam_data$Height == "Low",
  logical_method = "TRUE_if_one"
)
diff_fct_diff_class(
  data_fungi@sam_data$Height == "Low",
  logical_method = "NA_if_not_all_TRUE"
)
diff_fct_diff_class(
  data_fungi@sam_data$Height == "Low",
  logical_method = "FALSE_if_not_all_TRUE"
)
diff_fct_diff_class(
  data_fungi@sam_data$Height,

```



```

    character_method = "unique_or_na"
  )
diff_fct_diff_class(
  c("IE", "IE"),
  character_method = "unique_or_na"
)
diff_fct_diff_class(
  c("IE", "IE", "TE", "TE"),
  character_method = "more_frequent"
)
diff_fct_diff_class(
  c("IE", "IE", "TE", "TE"),
  character_method = "more_frequent_without_equality"
)

```

---

distri\_1\_taxa

*Distribution of sequences across a factor for one taxon*


---

### Description

Focus on one taxon and one factor.

### Usage

```
distri_1_taxa(physeq, fact, taxa_name, digits = 2)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor in physeq@sam_data used to plot different lines
taxa_name	(required): the name of the taxa
digits	(default = 2) integer indicating the number of decimal places to be used (see ?round for more information)

### Value

a dataframe with levels as rows and information as column :

- the number of sequences of the taxa (nb\_seq)
- the number of samples of the taxa (nb\_samp)
- the mean (mean\_nb\_seq) and standard deviation (sd\_nb\_seq) of the *nb\_seq*
- the mean (mean\_nb\_seq\_when\_present) *nb\_seq* excluding samples with zero
- the total number of samples (nb\_total\_samp)
- the proportion of samples with the taxa

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
distri_1_taxa(data_fungi, "Height", "ASV2")
distri_1_taxa(data_fungi, "Time", "ASV81", digits = 1)
```

---

dist\_bycol

*Compute paired distances among matrix (e.g. otu\_table)*

---

**Description**

May be used to verify ecological distance among samples.

**Usage**

```
dist_bycol(x, y, method = "bray", nperm = 99, ...)
```

**Arguments**

x	(required) A first matrix.
y	(required) A second matrix.
method	(default: 'bray') the method to use internally in the vegdist function.
nperm	(int) The number of permutations to perform.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <code>vegdist</code> function

**Value**

A list of length two : (i) a vector of observed distance (`$obs`) and (ii) a matrix of the distance after randomization (`$null`)

**Note**

the first column of the first matrix is compare to the first column of the second matrix, the second column of the first matrix is compare to the second column of the second matrix and so on.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[vegdist](#)

---

dist_pos_control	<i>Calculate ecological distance among positive controls vs distance for all samples</i>
------------------	--

---

### Description

Compute distance among positive controls, i.e. samples which are duplicated to test for variation, for example in (i) a step in the sampling, (ii) a step in the extraction, (iii) a step in the sequencing.

### Usage

```
dist_pos_control(physeq, samples_names, method = "bray")
```

### Arguments

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

samples\_names (required) a vector of names for samples with positives controls of the same samples having the same name

method (default: "bray") a method to calculate the distance, parsed to [vegan::vegdist\(\)](#). See [?vegdist](#) for a list of possible values.

### Value

A list of two data-frames with (i) the distance among positive controls and (ii) the distance among all samples

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
data("enterotype")
sam_name_factice <- gsub("TS1_V2", "TS10_V2", sample_names(enterotype))
res_dist_cont <- dist_pos_control(enterotype, sam_name_factice)
hist(unlist(res_dist_cont$distAllSamples))
abline(
  v = mean(unlist(res_dist_cont$dist_controlontrolSamples), na.rm = TRUE),
  col = "red", lwd = 3
)
```

---

fac2col *Translates a factor into colors.*

---

**Description**

Translates a factor into colors.

**Usage**

```
fac2col(x, col.pal = funky_color, na.col = "grey", seed = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

x a numeric vector (for num2col) or a vector converted to a factor (for fac2col).  
col.pal (default funky\_color) a function generating colors according to a given palette.  
na.col (default grey) the color to be used for missing values (NAs)  
seed (default NULL) a seed for R's random number generated, used to fix the random permutation of colors in the palette used; if NULL, no randomization is used and the colors are taken from the palette according to the ordering of the levels

**Value**

a color vector

**Author(s)**

Thibaut Jombart in adegenet package

**See Also**

The R package RColorBrewer, proposing a nice selection of color palettes. The viridis package, with many excellent palettes

---

filter\_asv\_blast *Filter undesirable taxa using blast against a custom database.*

---

**Description**

Use the blast software.

**Usage**

```

filter_asv_blast(
  physeq,
  fasta_for_db = NULL,
  database = NULL,
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  add_info_to_taxtable = TRUE,
  id_filter = 90,
  bit_score_filter = 50,
  min_cover_filter = 50,
  e_value_filter = 1e-30,
  ...
)

filter_taxa_blast(
  physeq,
  fasta_for_db = NULL,
  database = NULL,
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  add_info_to_taxtable = TRUE,
  id_filter = 90,
  bit_score_filter = 50,
  min_cover_filter = 50,
  e_value_filter = 1e-30,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fasta_for_db	path to a fasta file to make the blast database
database	path to a blast database
clean_pq	(logical) If set to TRUE, empty samples and empty taxa (ASV, OTU) are discarded after filtering.
add_info_to_taxtable	(logical, default TRUE) Does the blast information are added to the taxtable ?
id_filter	(default: 90) cut of in identity percent to keep result
bit_score_filter	(default: 50) cut of in bit score to keep result The higher the bit-score, the better the sequence similarity. The bit-score is the requires size of a sequence database in which the current match could be found just by chance. The bit-score is a log2 scaled and normalized raw-score. Each increase by one doubles the required database size (2bit-score).
min_cover_filter	(default: 50) cut of in query cover (%) to keep result

`e_value_filter` (default: 1e-30) cut of in e-value (%) to keep result The BLAST E-value is the number of expected hits of similar quality (score) that could be found just by chance.

... Additional arguments passed on to `tblast_pq()` function. See `?tblast_pq`. Note that params `unique_per_seq` must be left to `TRUE` and `score_filter` must be left to `FALSE`.

### Value

A new `phyloseq-class` object.

---

<code>filter_trim</code>	<i>A wrapper of the function <code>dada2::filterAndTrim()</code> to use in R</i> <i><a href="https://books.ropensci.org/targets/targets_pipeline">href=https://books.ropensci.org/targets/targets_pipeline</a></i>
--------------------------	---

---

### Description

This function filter and trim (with parameters passed on to `dada2::filterAndTrim()` function) forward sequences or paired end sequence if 'rev' parameter is set. It return the list of files to subsequent analysis in a targets pipeline.

### Usage

```
filter_trim(
  fw = NULL,
  rev = NULL,
  output_fw = file.path(paste(getwd(), "/output/filterAndTrim_fwd", sep = "")),
  output_rev = file.path(paste(getwd(), "/output/filterAndTrim_rev", sep = "")),
  return_a_vector = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

<code>fw</code>	(required) a list of forward fastq files
<code>rev</code>	a list of reverse fastq files for paired end trimming
<code>output_fw</code>	Path to output folder for forward files. By default, this function will create a folder "output/filterAndTrim_fwd" in the current working directory.
<code>output_rev</code>	Path to output folder for reverse files. By default, this function will create a folder "output/filterAndTrim_fwd" in the current working directory.
<code>return_a_vector</code>	(logical, default FALSE) If true, the return is a vector of path (usefull when used with <code>targets::tar_targets(..., format="file")</code> )
...	Other parameters passed on to <code>dada2::filterAndTrim()</code> function.

**Value**

A list of files. If rev is set, will return a list of two lists. The first list is a list of forward files, and the second one is a list of reverse files.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[dada2::filterAndTrim\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
testFastqs_fw <- c(
  system.file("extdata", "sam1F.fastq.gz", package = "dada2"),
  system.file("extdata", "sam2F.fastq.gz", package = "dada2")
)
testFastqs_rev <- c(
  system.file("extdata", "sam1R.fastq.gz", package = "dada2"),
  system.file("extdata", "sam2R.fastq.gz", package = "dada2")
)

filt_fastq_fw <- filter_trim(testFastqs_fw, output_fw = tempdir())
derep_fw <- derepFastq(filt_fastq_fw[1])
derep_fw

## Not run:
filt_fastq_pe <- filter_trim(testFastqs_fw,
  testFastqs_rev,
  output_fw = paste0(tempdir(), "/", "fw"),
  output_rev = paste0(tempdir(), "rev")
)
derep_fw_pe <- derepFastq(filt_fastq_pe[[1]])
derep_rv_pe <- derepFastq(filt_fastq_pe[[2]])
derep_fw_pe
derep_rv_pe

## End(Not run)
```

---

filt\_taxa\_pq

*Filter taxa of a phyloseq object based on the minimum number of sequences/samples*

---

**Description**

Basically a wrapper of [subset\\_taxa\\_pq\(\)](#).

**Usage**

```
filt_taxa_pq(  
  physeq,  
  min_nb_seq = NULL,  
  min_occurrence = NULL,  
  combination = "AND",  
  clean_pq = TRUE  
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
min_nb_seq	(int default NULL) minimum number of sequences by taxa.
min_occurrence	(int default NULL) minimum number of sample by taxa.
combination	Either "AND" (default) or "OR". If set to "AND" and both min_nb_seq and min_occurrence are not NULL, the taxa must match the two condition to pass the filter. If set to "OR", taxa matching only one condition are kept.
clean_pq	(logical) If set to TRUE, empty samples and empty taxa (ASV, OTU) are discarded after filtering.

**Value**

a new phyloseq object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
filt_taxa_pq(data_fungi, min_nb_seq = 20)  
filt_taxa_pq(data_fungi, min_occurrence = 2)  
filt_taxa_pq(data_fungi,  
  min_occurrence = 2,  
  min_nb_seq = 10, clean_pq = FALSE  
)  
filt_taxa_pq(data_fungi,  
  min_occurrence = 2,  
  min_nb_seq = 10,  
  combination = "OR"  
)
```



---

`filt_taxa_wo_NA`      *Filter taxa by cleaning taxa with NA at given taxonomic rank(s)*

---

### Description

Basically a wrapper of `subset_taxa_pq()`

### Usage

```
filt_taxa_wo_NA(  
  physeq,  
  taxa_ranks = NULL,  
  n_NA = 0,  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  NA_equivalent = NULL,  
  clean_pq = TRUE  
)
```

### Arguments

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
<code>taxa_ranks</code>	A vector of taxonomic ranks. For examples <code>c("Family","Genus")</code> . If <code>taxa_ranks</code> is <code>NULL</code> (default), all ranks are used, i.e. all taxa with at least 1 NA will be filtered out. Numeric position of taxonomic ranks can also be used.
<code>n_NA</code>	(int default = 0). Number of allowed NA by taxa in the list of the taxonomic ranks
<code>verbose</code>	(logical). If <code>TRUE</code> , print additional information.
<code>NA_equivalent</code>	(vector of character, default <code>NULL</code> ). Exact matching of the character listed in the vector are converted as NA before to filter out taxa.
<code>clean_pq</code>	(logical, default <code>TRUE</code> ) If set to <code>TRUE</code> , empty samples are discarded after filtering. See <a href="#">clean_pq()</a> .

### Value

An object of class `phyloseq`

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[subset\\_taxa\\_pq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

data_fungi_wo_NA <- filt_taxa_wo_NA(data_fungi)
filt_taxa_wo_NA(data_fungi, n_NA = 1)
filt_taxa_wo_NA(data_fungi, taxa_ranks = c(1:3))

filt_taxa_wo_NA(data_fungi, taxa_ranks = c("Trait", "Confidence.Ranking"))
filt_taxa_wo_NA(data_fungi,
  taxa_ranks = c("Trait", "Confidence.Ranking"),
  NA_equivalent = c("-", "NULL")
)

```

format2dada2

*Format a fasta database in dada2 format***Description**

First format in syntax format and then in dada2 format

**Usage**

```

format2dada2(
  fasta_db = NULL,
  taxnames = NULL,
  output_path = NULL,
  from_syntax = TRUE,
  pattern_to_remove = NULL,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

fasta_db	A link to a fasta files
taxnames	A list of names to format. You must specify either fasta_db OR taxnames, not both.
output_path	(optional) A path to an output fasta files. Only used if fasta_db is set.
from_syntax	(logical, default FALSE) Is the original fasta file in syntax format?
pattern_to_remove	(a regular expression) Define a pattern to remove. For example, pattern_to_remove = "\\rep.*" remove all character after 'rep' to force <a href="#">dada2::assignTaxonomy()</a> to not use the database as a Unite-formatted database
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">format2syntax()</a> function

**Value**

Either an object of class DNASTringSet or a vector of reformated names

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[format2dada2\\_species\(\)](#), [format2sintax\(\)](#)

---

format2dada2\_species    *Format a fasta database in dada2 format for Species assignment*

---

**Description**

First format in sintax format and then in dada2 format

**Usage**

```
format2dada2_species(  
  fasta_db = NULL,  
  taxnames = NULL,  
  from_sintax = FALSE,  
  output_path = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

fasta_db	A link to a fasta files
taxnames	A list of names to format. You must specify either fasta_db OR taxnames, not both.
from_sintax	(logical, default FALSE) Is the original fasta file in sintax format?
output_path	(optional) A path to an output fasta files. Only used if fasta_db is set.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">format2sintax()</a> function

**Value**

Either an object of class DNAStrngSet or a vector of reformated names

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[format2dada2\\_species\(\)](#), [format2sintax\(\)](#)

format2sintax

*Format a fasta database in syntax format***Description**

Only tested with Unite and Eukaryome fasta file for the moment. Rely on the presence of the pattern `pattern_tax` default "k\_\_" to format the header.

A reference database in syntax format contain taxonomic information in the header of each sequence in the form of a string starting with ";tax=" and followed by a comma-separated list of up to nine taxonomic identifiers. Each taxonomic identifier must start with an indication of the rank by one of the letters d (for domain) k (kingdom), p (phylum), c (class), o (order), f (family), g (genus), s (species), or t (strain). The letter is followed by a colon (:) and the name of that rank. Commas and semicolons are not allowed in the name of the rank. Non-ascii characters should be avoided in the names.

Example:

```
\>X80725_S000004313;tax=d:Bacteria,p:Proteobacteria,c:Gammaproteobacteria,o:Enterobacteriales,f:Enterobacteriaceae,g
12_substr._MG1655
```

**Usage**

```
format2sintax(
  fasta_db = NULL,
  taxnames = NULL,
  pattern_tax = "k__",
  pattern_sintax = "tax=k:",
  output_path = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>fasta_db</code>	A link to a fasta files
<code>taxnames</code>	A list of names to format. You must specify either <code>fasta_db</code> OR <code>taxnames</code> , not both.
<code>pattern_tax</code>	(default "k__") The pattern to replace by <code>pattern_sintax</code> .
<code>pattern_sintax</code>	(default "tax=k:") Useless for most users. Sometimes you may want to replacte by "tax=d:" (d for domain instead of kingdom).
<code>output_path</code>	(optional) A path to an output fasta files. Only used if <code>fasta_db</code> is set.

**Value**

Either an object of class `DNAStrngSet` or a vector of reformated names

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[format2dada2\\_species\(\)](#), [format2dada2\(\)](#)

---

formattable_pq	<i>Create a visualization table to describe taxa distribution across a modality</i>
----------------	---

---

**Description**

Allow to visualize a table with graphical input.

**Usage**

```
formattable_pq(
  physeq,
  modality,
  taxonomic_levels = c("Phylum", "Order", "Family", "Genus"),
  min_nb_seq_taxa = 1000,
  log10trans = FALSE,
  void_style = FALSE,
  lev_col_taxa = "Phylum",
  arrange_by = "nb_seq",
  descending_order = TRUE,
  na_remove = TRUE,
  formattable_args = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
modality	(required) The name of a column present in the @sam_data slot of the physeq object. Must be a character vector or a factor.
taxonomic_levels	(default = c("Phylum", "Order", "Family", "Genus")) The taxonomic levels (must be present in the @sam_data slot) you want to see and/or used (for example to compute a color) in the table.
min_nb_seq_taxa	(default = 1000) filter out taxa with less than min_nb_seq_taxa sequences
log10trans	(logical, default TRUE) Do sequences count is log10 transformed (using log10(x + 1) to allow 0)
void_style	(logical, default FALSE) Do the default style is discard ?
lev_col_taxa	Taxonomic level used to plot the background color of taxa names
arrange_by	The column used to sort the table. Can take the values NULL, "proportion_samp", "nb_seq" (default), , "nb_sam" "OTU", or a column names from the levels of modality or from taxonomic levels

`descending_order`  
 (logical, default TRUE) Do we use descending order when sort the table (if `arrange_by` is not NULL) ?

`na_remove`  
 (logical, default TRUE) if TRUE remove all the samples with NA in the `split_by` variable of the `physeq@sam_data` slot

`formattable_args`  
 Other args to the `formattable` function. See examples and `formattable::formattable()`

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `formattable::formattable()` if you use this function.

### Value

A datatable

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

`formattable::formattable()`

### Examples

```

if (requireNamespace("formattable")) {
  ## Distribution of the nb of sequences per OTU across Height
  ## modality (nb of sequences are log-transformed).
  ## Only OTU with more than 10000 sequences are taking into account
  ## The Phylum column is discarded
  formattable_pq(
    data_fungi,
    "Height",
    min_nb_seq_taxa = 10000,
    formattable_args = list("Phylum" = FALSE),
    log10trans = TRUE
  )

  ## Distribution of the nb of samples per OTU across Height modality
  ## Only OTU present in more than 50 samples are taking into account
  formattable_pq(
    as_binary_otu_table(data_fungi),
    "Height",
    min_nb_seq_taxa = 50,
    formattable_args = list("nb_seq" = FALSE),
  )

  ## Distribution of the nb of sequences per OTU across Time modality
  ## arranged by Family Name in ascending order.

```

```

## Only OTU with more than 10000 sequences are taking into account
## The Phylum column is discarded
formattable_pq(
  data_fungi,
  "Time",
  min_nb_seq_taxa = 10000,
  taxonomic_levels = c("Order", "Family", "Genus", "Species"),
  formattable_args = list(
    Order = FALSE,
    Species = formattable::formatter(
      "span",
      style = x ~ formattable::style(
        "font-style" = "italic",
        `color` = ifelse(is.na(x), "white", "grey")
      )
    )
  ),
  arrange_by = "Family",
  descending_order = FALSE
)
}

if (requireNamespace("formattable")) {
  ## Distribution of the nb of sequences per OTU across Height modality
  ## (nb of sequences are log-transformed).
  ## OTU name background is light gray for Basidiomycota
  ## and dark grey otherwise (Ascomycota)
  ## A different color is defined for each modality level
  formattable_pq(
    data_fungi,
    "Height",
    taxonomic_levels = c("Phylum", "Family", "Genus"),
    void_style = TRUE,
    formattable_args = list(
      OTU = formattable::formatter(
        "span",
        style = ~ formattable::style(
          "display" = "block",
          `border-radius` = "5px",
          `background-color` = ifelse(Phylum == "Basidiomycota", transp("gray"), "gray")
        ),
        `padding-right` = "2px"
      ),
      High = formattable::formatter(
        "span",
        style = x ~ formattable::style(
          "font-size" = "80%",
          "display" = "inline-block",
          direction = "rtl",
          `border-radius` = "0px",
          `padding-right` = "2px",
          `background-color` = formattable::csscolor(formattable::gradient(
            as.numeric(x), transp("#1a91ff"), "#1a91ff"
          )
        )
      )
    )
  )
}

```

```

    )),
    width = formattable::percent(formattable::proportion(as.numeric(x), na.rm = TRUE))
  )
),
Low = formattable::formatter(
  "span",
  style = x ~ formattable::style(
    "font-size" = "80%",
    "display" = "inline-block",
    "direction" = "rtl",
    `border-radius` = "0px",
    `padding-right` = "2px",
    `background-color` = formattable::csscolor(formattable::gradient(
      as.numeric(x),
      transp("green"), "green"
    )),
    width = formattable::percent(formattable::proportion(as.numeric(x), na.rm = TRUE))
  )
),
Middle = formattable::formatter(
  "span",
  style = x ~ formattable::style(
    "font-size" = "80%",
    "display" = "inline-block",
    "direction" = "rtl",
    `border-radius` = "0px",
    `padding-right` = "2px",
    `background-color` = formattable::csscolor(formattable::gradient(
      as.numeric(x), transp("orange"), "orange"
    )),
    width = formattable::percent(formattable::proportion(as.numeric(x), na.rm = TRUE))
  )
)
)
)
}

```

---

funguild\_assign

Assign Guilds to Organisms Based on Taxonomic Classification

---

### Description

The original function and documentation was written by Brendan Furneaux in the **FUNGuildR** package.

These functions have identical behavior if supplied with a database; however they download the database corresponding to their name by default.

Taxa present in the database are matched to the taxa present in the supplied `otu_table` by exact name. In the case of multiple matches, the lowest (most specific) rank is chosen. No attempt is made to check or correct the classification in `otu_table$Taxonomy`.



**Usage**

```
funguild_assign(
  otu_table,
  db_url = NULL,
  db_funguild = NULL,
  tax_col = "Taxonomy"
)
```

**Arguments**

otu_table	A data.frame with a character column named "Taxonomy" (or another name as specified in tax_col), as well as any other columns. Each entry in "otu_table\$Taxonomy" should be a comma-, colon-, underscore-, or semicolon-delimited classification of an organism. Rank indicators as given by Sntax ("k:", "p:...") or Unite ("k__", "p__", ...) are also allowed. A character vector, representing only the taxonomic classification, is also accepted.
db_url	a length 1 character string giving the URL to retrieve the database from
db_funguild	A data.frame representing the FUNGuild as returned by <a href="#">get_funguild_db()</a> . If not supplied, the default database will be downloaded.
tax_col	A character string, optionally giving an alternate column name in otu_table to use instead of otu_table\$Taxonomy.

**Value**

A `tibble::tibble` containing all columns of otu\_table, plus relevant columns of information from the FUNGuild

**Author(s)**

Brendan Furneaux (orcid: [0000-0003-3522-7363](#)), modified by Adrien Taudière

**References**

Nguyen NH, Song Z, Bates ST, Branco S, Tedersoo L, Menke J, Schilling JS, Kennedy PG. 2016. *FUNGuild: An open annotation tool for parsing fungal community datasets by ecological guild*. Fungal Ecology 20:241-248.

---

funky\_color

*Funky palette color*


---

**Description**

Funky palette color

**Usage**

```
funky_color(n)
```

**Arguments**

n                    a number of colors

**Value**

a color palette

**Author(s)**

Thibaut Jombart in adegenet package

**See Also**

The R package RColorBrewer, proposing a nice selection of color palettes. The viridis package, with many excellent palettes

---

get\_file\_extension     *Get the extension of a file*

---

**Description**

Internally used in `count_seq()`. Warning: don't work when there is '.' in the name of the file before the extension

**Usage**

```
get_file_extension(file_path)
```

**Arguments**

file\_path            (required): path to a file

**Value**

The extension of a file.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

---

get_funguild_db	<i>Retrieve the FUNGuild database</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------------

---

### Description

The original function and documentation was written by Brendan Furneaux in the [FUNGuildR](#) package.

Please cite this publication ([doi:10.1016/j.funeco.2015.06.006](https://doi.org/10.1016/j.funeco.2015.06.006)).

### Usage

```
get_funguild_db(db_url = "http://www.stbates.org/funguild_db_2.php")
```

### Arguments

db\_url            a length 1 character string giving the URL to retrieve the database from

### Value

a `tibble::tibble` containing the database, which can be passed to the db argument of `funguild_assign()`

### Author(s)

Brendan Furneaux (orcid: [0000-0003-3522-7363](https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3522-7363)), modified by Adrien Taudière

### References

Nguyen NH, Song Z, Bates ST, Branco S, Tedersoo L, Menke J, Schilling JS, Kennedy PG. 2016. *FUNGuild: An open annotation tool for parsing fungal community datasets by ecological guild*. *Fungal Ecology* 20:241-248.

---

ggaluv_pq	<i>Alluvial plot for taxonomy and samples factor vizualisation</i>
-----------	--

---

### Description

Basically a wrapper of [ggalluvial](#) package

**Usage**

```

ggaluv_pq(
  physeq,
  taxa_ranks = c("Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family"),
  wrap_factor = NULL,
  by_sample = FALSE,
  rarefy_by_sample = FALSE,
  fact = NULL,
  type = "nb_seq",
  width = 1.2,
  min.size = 3,
  na_remove = FALSE,
  use_ggfittext = FALSE,
  use_geom_label = FALSE,
  size_lab = 2,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
taxa_ranks	A vector of taxonomic ranks. For examples c("Family","Genus"). If taxa ranks is not set (default value = c("Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family")).
wrap_factor	A name to determine which samples to merge using <a href="#">merge_samples2()</a> function. Need to be in physeq@sam_data. Need to be use when you want to wrap by factor the final plot with the number of taxa (type="nb_taxa")
by_sample	(logical) If FALSE (default), sample information is not taking into account, so the taxonomy is studied globally. If fact is not NULL, by_sample is automatically set to TRUE.
rarefy_by_sample	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, rarefy samples using <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> function.
fact	(required) Name of the factor in physeq@sam_data used to plot the last column
type	If "nb_seq" (default), the number of sequences is used in plot. If "nb_taxa", the number of ASV is plotted.
width	(passed on to <a href="#">ggalluvial::geom_flow()</a> ) the width of each stratum, as a proportion of the distance between axes. Defaults to 1/3.
min.size	(passed on to <a href="#">ggfittext::geom_fit_text()</a> ) Minimum font size, in points. Text that would need to be shrunk below this size to fit the box will be hidden. Defaults to 4 pt.
na_remove	(logical, default FALSE) If set to TRUE, remove samples with NA in the variables set in formula.
use_ggfittext	(logical, default FALSE) Do we use ggfittext to plot labels?
use_geom_label	(logical, default FALSE) Do we use geom_label to plot labels?
size_lab	Size for label if use_ggfittext is FALSE
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">ggalluvial::geom_flow()</a> function.

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to ggalluvial package if you use this function.

## Value

A ggplot object

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## See Also

[sankey\\_pq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("ggalluvial")) {
  ggaluv_pq(data_fungi_mini)
}

if (requireNamespace("ggalluvial")) {
  ggaluv_pq(data_fungi_mini, type = "nb_taxa")

  ggaluv_pq(data_fungi_mini, wrap_factor = "Height", by_sample = TRUE, type = "nb_taxa") +
    facet_wrap("Height")

  ggaluv_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    width = 0.9, min.size = 10,
    type = "nb_taxa", taxa_ranks = c("Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Family", "Genus")
  ) +
  coord_flip() + scale_x_discrete(limits = rev)
}
```

---

ggbetween\_pq

*Box/Violin plots for between-subjects comparisons of Hill Number*

---

## Description

Note that contrary to [hill\\_pq\(\)](#), this function does not take into account for difference in the number of sequences per samples/modalities. You may use `rarefy_by_sample = TRUE` if the mean number of sequences per samples differs among modalities.

Basically a wrapper of function `ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats()` for object of class phyloseq

## Usage

```
ggbetween_pq(physeq, fact, one_plot = FALSE, rarefy_by_sample = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required): The variable to test. Must be present in the <code>sam_data</code> slot of the physeq object.
one_plot	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, return a unique plot with the three plot inside using the patchwork package.
rarefy_by_sample	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, rarefy samples using <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> function
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats()</a> function.

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats()` if you use this function.

**Value**

Either an unique ggplot2 object (if `one_plot` is TRUE) or a list of 3 ggplot2 plot:

- `plot_Hill_0` : the `ggbetweenstats` of Hill number 0 (= species richness) against the variable `fact`
- `plot_Hill_1` : the `ggbetweenstats` of Hill number 1 (= Shannon index) against the variable `fact`
- `plot_Hill_2` : the `ggbetweenstats` of Hill number 2 (= Simpson index) against the variable `fact`

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("ggstatsplot")) {
  p <- ggbetween_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Time", p.adjust.method = "BH")
  p[[1]]
  ggbetween_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", one_plot = TRUE)
  ggbetween_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", one_plot = TRUE, rarefy_by_sample = TRUE)
}
```

---

ggscatt_pq	<i>Scatterplot with marginal distributions and statistical results against Hill diversity of phyloseq object</i>
------------	--

---

## Description

Basically a wrapper of function `ggstatsplot::ggscatterstats()` for object of class `phyloseq` and Hill number.

## Usage

```
ggscatt_pq(
  physeq,
  num_modality,
  hill_scales = c(0, 1, 2),
  rarefy_by_sample = FALSE,
  one_plot = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
num_modality	(required) Name of the numeric column in <code>physeq@sam_data</code> to plot and test against hill number
hill_scales	(a vector of integer) The list of q values to compute the hill number $H^q$ . If Null, no hill number are computed. Default value compute the Hill number 0 (Species richness), the Hill number 1 (exponential of Shannon Index) and the Hill number 2 (inverse of Simpson Index).
rarefy_by_sample	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, rarefy samples using <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> function.
one_plot	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, return a unique plot with the three plot inside using the patchwork package.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">ggstatsplot::ggscatterstats()</a> function.

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `ggstatsplot::ggscatterstats()` if you use this function.

## Value

Either an unique `ggplot2` object (if `one_plot` is TRUE) or a list of `ggplot2` plot for each `hill_scales`.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**[ggbetween\\_pq\(\)](#)**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("ggstatsplot")) {
  ggscatt_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Time", type = "non-parametric")
  ggscatt_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Time", hill_scales = 1:4, type = "parametric")
  ggscatt_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Sample_id",
    hill_scales = c(0, 0.5),
    one_plot = FALSE
  )
}
```

---

`ggvenn_pq`*Venn diagram of [phyloseq-class](#) object using  
`ggVennDiagram::ggVennDiagram` function*

---

**Description**

Note that you can use `ggplot2` function to customize the plot for ex. `+ scale_fill_distiller(palette = "BuPu", direction = 1)` and `+ scale_x_continuous(expand = expansion(mult = 0.5))`. See examples.

**Usage**

```
ggvenn_pq(
  physeq = NULL,
  fact = NULL,
  min_nb_seq = 0,
  taxonomic_rank = NULL,
  split_by = NULL,
  add_nb_samples = TRUE,
  add_nb_seq = FALSE,
  rarefy_before_merging = FALSE,
  rarefy_after_merging = FALSE,
  return_data_for_venn = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE,
  type = "nb_taxa",
  na_remove = TRUE,
  ...
)
```



**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required): Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam_data.
min_nb_seq	minimum number of sequences by OTUs by samples to take into count this OTUs in this sample. For example, if min_nb_seq=2,each value of 2 or less in the OTU table will not count in the venn diagram
taxonomic_rank	Name (or number) of a taxonomic rank to count. If set to Null (the default) the number of OTUs is counted.
split_by	Split into multiple plot using variable split_by. The name of a variable must be present in sam_data slot of the physeq object.
add_nb_samples	(logical, default TRUE) Add the number of samples to levels names
add_nb_seq	(logical, default FALSE) Add the number of sequences to levels names
rarefy_before_merging	Rarefy each sample before merging by the modalities of args fact. Use phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth function
rarefy_after_merging	Rarefy each sample after merging by the modalities of args fact.
return_data_for_venn	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, the plot is not returned, but the resulting dataframe to plot with ggVennDiagram package is returned.
verbose	(logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, prompt some messages.
type	If "nb_taxa" (default), the number of taxa (ASV, OTU or taxonomic_rank if taxonomic_rank is not NULL) is used in plot. If "nb_seq", the number of sequences is plotted. taxonomic_rank is never used if type = "nb_seq".
na_remove	(logical, default TRUE) If set to TRUE, remove samples with NA in the variables set in fact param
...	Other arguments for the ggVennDiagram::ggVennDiagram function for ex. category.names.

**Value**

A [ggplot2](#) plot representing Venn diagram of modalities of the argument factor or if split\_by is set a list of plots.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[upset\\_pq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```

if (requireNamespace("ggVennDiagram")) {
  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height")
}

if (requireNamespace("ggVennDiagram")) {
  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height") +
    ggplot2::scale_fill_distiller(palette = "BuPu", direction = 1)
  pl <- ggvenn_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", split_by = "Time")
  for (i in seq_along(pl)) {
    p <- pl[[i]] +
      scale_fill_distiller(palette = "BuPu", direction = 1) +
      theme(plot.title = element_text(hjust = 0.5, size = 22))
    print(p)
  }

  data_fungi2 <- subset_samples(data_fungi, data_fungi@sam_data$Tree_name == "A10-005" |
    data_fungi@sam_data$Height %in% c("Low", "High"))
  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi2, fact = "Height")

  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi2, fact = "Height", type = "nb_seq")

  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", add_nb_seq = TRUE, set_size = 4)
  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", rarefy_before_merging = TRUE)
  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", rarefy_after_merging = TRUE) +
    scale_x_continuous(expand = expansion(mult = 0.5))

  # For more flexibility, you can save the dataset for more precise construction
  # with ggplot2 and ggVennDiagram
  # (https://gaospecial.github.io/ggVennDiagram/articles/fully-customed.html)
  res_venn <- ggvenn_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", return_data_for_venn = TRUE)

  ggplot() +
    # 1. region count layer
    geom_polygon(aes(X, Y, group = id, fill = name),
      data = ggVennDiagram::venn_regionedge(res_venn)
    ) +
    scale_fill_manual(values = funky_color(7)) +
    # 2. set edge layer
    geom_path(aes(X, Y, color = id, group = id),
      data = ggVennDiagram::venn_setedge(res_venn),
      show.legend = FALSE, linewidth = 2
    ) +
    scale_color_manual(values = c("red", "red", "blue")) +
    # 3. set label layer
    geom_text(aes(X, Y, label = name),
      data = ggVennDiagram::venn_setlabel(res_venn)
    ) +
    # 4. region label layer
    geom_label(
      aes(X, Y, label = paste0(
        count, " (",

```

```

        scales::percent(count / sum(count), accuracy = 2), ")")
    )),
    data = ggVennDiagram::venn_regionlabel(res_venn)
  ) +
  theme_void()
}

```

---

glmutli\_pq

*Automated model selection and multimodel inference with (G)LMs for phyloseq*


---

### Description

See `glmulti::glmulti()` for more information.

### Usage

```

glmutli_pq(
  physeq,
  formula,
  fitfunction = "lm",
  hill_scales = c(0, 1, 2),
  aic_step = 2,
  confsetsize = 100,
  plotty = FALSE,
  level = 1,
  method = "h",
  crit = "aicc",
  ...
)

```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
formula	(required) a formula for <code>glmulti::glmulti()</code> Variables must be present in the <code>physeq@sam_data</code> slot or be one of hill number defined in <code>hill_scales</code> or the variable <code>Abundance</code> which refer to the number of sequences per sample.
fitfunction	(default "lm")
hill_scales	(a vector of integer) The list of q values to compute the hill number $H^q$ . If Null, no hill number are computed. Default value compute the Hill number 0 (Species richness), the Hill number 1 (exponential of Shannon Index) and the Hill number 2 (inverse of Simpson Index).
aic_step	The value between AIC scores to cut for.
confsetsize	The number of models to be looked for, i.e. the size of the returned confidence set.

plotty	(logical) Whether to plot the progress of the IC profile when running.
level	If 1, only main effects (terms of order 1) are used to build the candidate set. If 2, pairwise interactions are also used (higher order interactions are currently ignored)
method	The method to be used to explore the candidate set of models. If "h" (default) an exhaustive screening is undertaken. If "g" the genetic algorithm is employed (recommended for large candidate sets). If "l", a very fast exhaustive branch-and-bound algorithm is used. Package leaps must then be loaded, and this can only be applied to linear models with covariates and no interactions. If "d", a simple summary of the candidate set is printed, including the number of candidate models.
crit	The Information Criterion to be used. Default is the small-sample corrected AIC (aicc). This should be a function that accepts a fitted model as first argument. Other provided functions are the classic AIC, the Bayes IC (bic), and QAIC/QAICc (qaic and qaicc).
...	Additional arguments passed on to <code>glmulti::glmulti()</code> function

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `glmulti::glmulti()` if you use this function.

### Value

A data.frame summarizing the glmulti results with columns  
`-estimates -unconditional_interval -nb_model" -importance -alpha`

### See Also

`glmulti::glmulti()`

### Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("glmulti")) {
  res_glmulti <-
    glmutli_pq(data_fungi, "Hill_0 ~ Hill_1 + Abundance + Time + Height", level = 1)
  res_glmulti
  res_glmulti_interaction <-
    glmutli_pq(data_fungi, "Hill_0 ~ Abundance + Time + Height", level = 2)
  res_glmulti
}
```

---

graph_test_pq	<i>Performs graph-based permutation tests on phyloseq object</i>
---------------	--

---

### Description

A wrapper of `phyloseqGraphTest::graph_perm_test()` for quick plot with important statistics

### Usage

```
graph_test_pq(
  physeq,
  fact,
  merge_sample_by = NULL,
  nperm = 999,
  return_plot = TRUE,
  title = "Graph Test",
  na_remove = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in <code>physeq@sam_data</code> . This should be a factor with two or more levels.
merge_sample_by	a vector to determine which samples to merge using <a href="#">merge_samples2()</a> function. Need to be in <code>physeq@sam_data</code>
nperm	(int) The number of permutations to perform.
return_plot	(logical) Do we return only the result of the test, or do we plot the result?
title	The title of the Graph.
na_remove	(logical, default FALSE) If set to TRUE, remove samples with NA in the variables set in formula.
...	Other params for be passed on to <a href="#">phyloseqGraphTest::graph_perm_test()</a> function

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite phyloseqGraphTest package.

### Value

A [ggplot2](#) plot with a subtitle indicating the pvalue and the number of permutations

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

if (requireNamespace("phyloseqGraphTest")) {
  data(enterotype)
  graph_test_pq(enterotype, fact = "SeqTech")
  graph_test_pq(enterotype, fact = "Enterotype", na_remove = TRUE)
}

```

---

hill\_curves\_pq

*Hill Diversities and Corresponding Accumulation Curves for phyloseq*


---

**Description**

Basically a wrapper of `vegan::renyi()` and `vegan::renyiaccum()` functions

**Usage**

```

hill_curves_pq(
  physeq,
  merge_sample_by = NULL,
  color_fac = NULL,
  hill_scales = c(0, 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, Inf),
  nperm = NULL,
  na_remove = TRUE,
  wrap_factor = TRUE,
  plot_legend = TRUE,
  linewidth = 2,
  size_point = 2,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
merge_sample_by	a vector to determine which samples to merge using the <a href="#">merge_samples2()</a> function. Need to be in <code>physeq@sam_data</code>
color_fac	(optional): The variable to color the barplot. For ex. same as fact. If <code>merge_sample_by</code> is set, <code>color_fac</code> must be nested in the <code>merge_sample_by</code> factor. See examples.
hill_scales	Scales of Rényi diversity.
nperm	(int Default NULL) If a integer is set to <code>nperm</code> , <code>nperm</code> permutation are computed to draw confidence interval for each curves. The function use <a href="#">vegan::renyi()</a> if <code>nperm</code> is NULL and <a href="#">vegan::renyiaccum()</a> else.

na_remove	(logical, default FALSE) If set to TRUE, remove samples with NA in the variables set in merge_sample_by. Not used if merge_sample_by is NULL.
wrap_factor	(logical, default TRUE) Do the plot is wrap by the factor
plot_legend	(logical, default TRUE) If set to FALSE, no legend are plotted.
linewidth	(int, default 2) The linewidth of lines.
size_point	(int, default 1) The size of the point.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <code>vegan::renyi()</code> function or <code>vegan::renyiaccum()</code> if nperm is not NULL.

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `vegan::renyi()` or `vegan::renyiaccum()` functions

### Value

A ggplot2 object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("vegan")) {
  hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini, merge_sample_by = "Time")
  hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini, color_fac = "Time", plot_legend = FALSE)
  hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    color_fac = "Time", plot_legend = FALSE,
    nperm = 9, size_point = 1, linewidth = 0.5
  )

  hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    nperm = 9, plot_legend = FALSE, size_point = 1,
    linewidth = 0.5
  )
  hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Height",
    hill_scales = c(0, 1, 2, 8), plot_legend = FALSE
  )
  hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Height",
    hill_scales = c(0, 0.5, 1, 2, 4, 8),
    nperm = 9
  )
  hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Height", nperm = 9, wrap_factor = FALSE)

  data_fungi_mini@sam_data$H_T <- paste0(
    data_fungi_mini@sam_data$Height,
    "_", data_fungi_mini@sam_data$Time
  )
  merge_samples2(data_fungi_mini, "H_T")
}
```

```
hill_curves_pq(data_fungi_mini, "H_T", color_fac = "Time", nperm = 9)
}
```

---

hill\_pq

*Graphical representation of hill number 0, 1 and 2 across a factor*


---

## Description

Hill numbers are the number of equiprobable species giving the same diversity value as the observed distribution. The Hill number 0 correspond to Species richness), the Hill number 1 to the exponential of Shannon Index and the Hill number 2 to the inverse of Simpson Index)

Note that (if `correction_for_sample_size` is TRUE, default behavior) this function use a sqrt of the read numbers in the linear model in order to correct for uneven sampling depth. This correction is only done before tuckey HSD plot and do not change the hill number computed.

## Usage

```
hill_pq(
  physeq,
  fact = NULL,
  variable = NULL,
  hill_scales = c(0, 1, 2),
  color_fac = NA,
  letters = FALSE,
  add_points = FALSE,
  add_info = TRUE,
  kruskal_test = TRUE,
  one_plot = FALSE,
  plot_with_tuckey = TRUE,
  correction_for_sample_size = TRUE,
  na_remove = TRUE,
  vioplot = FALSE
)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required): The variable to test. Must be present in the <code>sam_data</code> slot of the physeq object.
variable	: Alias for factor. Kept only for backward compatibility.
hill_scales	(a vector of integer) The list of q values to compute the hill number $H^q$ . If Null, no hill number are computed. Default value compute the Hill number 0 (Species richness), the Hill number 1 (exponential of Shannon Index) and the Hill number 2 (inverse of Simpson Index).



color_fac	(optional): The variable to color the barplot. For ex. same as fact. Not very useful because ggplot2 plot colors can be change using <code>scale_color_XXX()</code> function.
letters	(optional, default FALSE): If set to TRUE, the plot show letters based on p-values for comparison. Use the <code>multcompLetters</code> function from the package <code>multcompLetters</code> . BROKEN for the moment. Note that na values in The variable param need to be removed (see examples) to use letters.
add_points	(logical, default FALSE): add jitter point on boxplot
add_info	(logical, default TRUE) Do we add a subtitle with information about the number of samples per modality ?
kruskal_test	(logical, default TRUE) Do we test for global effect of our factor on each hill scales values? When <code>kruskal_test</code> is TRUE, the resulting test value are add in each plot in subtitle (unless <code>add_info</code> is FALSE). Moreover, if at least one hill scales is not significantly link to fact ( $pval > 0.05$ ), a message is prompt saying that Tuckey HSD plot is not informative for those Hill scales and letters are not printed.
one_plot	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, return a unique plot with the four plot inside using the patchwork package. Note that if <code>letters</code> and <code>one_plot</code> are both TRUE, tuckey HSD results are discarded from the unique plot. In that case, use <code>one_plot = FALSE</code> to see the tuckey HSD results in the fourth plot of the resulting list.
plot_with_tuckey	(logical, default TRUE). If <code>one_plot</code> is set to TRUE and <code>letters</code> to FALSE, allow to discard the tuckey plot part with <code>plot_with_tuckey = FALSE</code>
correction_for_sample_size	(logical, default TRUE) This function use a sqrt of the read numbers in the linear model in order to correct for uneven sampling depth in the Tuckey TEST. This params do not change value of Hill number but only the test associated values (including the pvalues). To rarefy samples, you may use the function <code>phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</code> .
na_remove	(logical, default TRUE) Do we remove samples with NA in the factor fact ? Note that <code>na_remove</code> is always TRUE when using <code>letters = TRUE</code>
vioplot	(logical, default FALSE) Do we plot violin plot instead of boxplot ?

### Value

Either an unique ggplot2 object (if `one_plot` is TRUE) or a list of  $n+1$  ggplot2 plot (with  $n$  the number of hill scale value). For example, with the default scale value:

- `plot_Hill_0` : the boxplot of Hill number 0 (= species richness) against the variable
- `plot_Hill_1` : the boxplot of Hill number 1 (= Shannon index) against the variable
- `plot_Hill_2` : the boxplot of Hill number 2 (= Simpson index) against the variable
- `plot_tuckey` : plot the result of the Tuckey HSD test

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[psmelt\\_samples\\_pq\(\)](#) and [ggbetween\\_pq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
p <- hill_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Height", hill_scales = 1:2)
p_h1 <- p[[1]] + theme(legend.position = "none")
p_h2 <- p[[2]] + theme(legend.position = "none")
multiplot(plotlist = list(p_h1, p_h2, p[[3]]), cols = 4)

if (requireNamespace("multcompView")) {
  p2 <- hill_pq(data_fungi, "Time",
    correction_for_sample_size = FALSE,
    letters = TRUE, add_points = TRUE,
    plot_with_tuckey = FALSE
  )
  if (requireNamespace("patchwork")) {
    patchwork::wrap_plots(p2, guides = "collect")
  }
  # Artificially modify data_fungi to force alpha-diversity effect
  data_fungi_modif <- clean_pq(subset_samples_pq(data_fungi, !is.na(data_fungi@sam_data$Height)))
  data_fungi_modif@otu_table[data_fungi_modif@sam_data$Height == "High", ] <-
    data_fungi_modif@otu_table[data_fungi_modif@sam_data$Height == "High", ] +
    sample(c(rep(0, ntaxa(data_fungi_modif) / 2), rep(100, ntaxa(data_fungi_modif) / 2)))
  p3 <- hill_pq(data_fungi_modif, "Height",
    letters = TRUE, vioplot = TRUE,
    add_points = TRUE
  )
}
```

---

hill\_test\_rarperm\_pq *Test multiple times effect of factor on Hill diversity with different rarefaction even depth*

---

**Description**

This reduce the risk of a random drawing of a exceptional situation of an unique rarefaction.

**Usage**

```
hill_test_rarperm_pq(
  physeq,
  fact,
  hill_scales = c(0, 1, 2),
  nperm = 99,
  sample.size = min(sample_sums(physeq)),
  verbose = FALSE,
  progress_bar = TRUE,
```

```

    p_val_signif = 0.05,
    type = "non-parametrique",
    ...
)

```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor in physeq@sam_data used to plot different lines
hill_scales	(a vector of integer) The list of q values to compute the hill number $H^q$ . If Null, no hill number are computed. Default value compute the Hill number 0 (Species richness), the Hill number 1 (exponential of Shannon Index) and the Hill number 2 (inverse of Simpson Index).
nperm	(int) The number of permutations to perform.
sample.size	(int) A single integer value equal to the number of reads being simulated, also known as the depth. See <a href="#">phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</a> .
verbose	(logical). If TRUE, print additional information.
progress_bar	(logical, default TRUE) Do we print progress during the calculation?
p_val_signif	(float, [0:1]) The minimum value of p-value to count a test as significant in the prop_signif result.
type	A character specifying the type of statistical approach (See <a href="#">ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats()</a> for more details): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "parametric"</li> <li>• "nonparametric"</li> <li>• "robust"</li> <li>• "bayes"</li> </ul>
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats()</a> function

### Value

A list of 6 components :

- method
- expressions
- plots
- pvals
- prop\_signif
- statistics

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

`ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats()`, `hill_pq()`

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("ggstatsplot")) {
  hill_test_rarperm_pq(data_fungi, "Time", nperm = 2)
  res <- hill_test_rarperm_pq(data_fungi, "Height", nperm = 9, p.val = 0.9)
  patchwork::wrap_plots(res$plots[[1]])
  res$plots[[1]][[1]] + res$plots[[2]][[1]] + res$plots[[3]][[1]]
  res$prop_signif
  res_para <- hill_test_rarperm_pq(data_fungi, "Height", nperm = 9, type = "parametrique")
  res_para$plots[[1]][[1]] + res_para$plots[[2]][[1]] + res_para$plots[[3]][[1]]
  res_para$pvals
  res_para$method
  res_para$expressions[[1]]
}
```

---

hill\_tuckey\_pq

*Calculate hill number and compute Tuckey post-hoc test*

---

**Description**

Note that, by default, this function use a sqrt of the read numbers in the linear model in order to correct for uneven sampling depth.

**Usage**

```
hill_tuckey_pq(
  physeq,
  modality,
  hill_scales = c(0, 1, 2),
  silent = TRUE,
  correction_for_sample_size = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
modality	(required) the variable to test
hill_scales	(a vector of integer) The list of q values to compute the hill number $H^q$ . If Null, no hill number are computed. Default value compute the Hill number 0 (Species richness), the Hill number 1 (exponential of Shannon Index) and the Hill number 2 (inverse of Simpson Index).
silent	(logical) If TRUE, no message are printing.
correction_for_sample_size	(logical, default TRUE) This function use a sqrt of the read numbers in the linear model in order to correct for uneven sampling depth.

**Value**

A ggplot2 object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
GlobalPatterns@sam_data[, "Soil_logical"] <-
  ifelse(GlobalPatterns@sam_data[, "SampleType"] == "Soil", "Soil", "Not Soil")
hill_tuckey_pq(GlobalPatterns, "Soil_logical")
hill_tuckey_pq(GlobalPatterns, "Soil_logical", hill_scales = 1:2)
```

---

iNEXT\_pq

*iNterpolation and EXTrapolation of Hill numbers (with iNEXT)*


---

**Description**

Note that this function is quite time-consuming due to high dimensionality in metabarcoding community matrix.

**Usage**

```
iNEXT_pq(physeq, merge_sample_by = NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

merge\_sample\_by

(default: NULL) if not NULL samples of physeq are merged using the vector set by merge\_sample\_by. This merging used the [merge\\_samples2\(\)](#). In the case of [biplot\\_pq\(\)](#) this must be a factor with two levels only.

...

Other arguments for the [iNEXT::iNEXT\(\)](#) function

**Value**

see [iNEXT::iNEXT\(\)](#) documentation

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to [iNEXT::iNEXT\(\)](#) if you use this function.

**Examples**

```

if (requireNamespace("iNEXT")) {
  data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
  GPsubset <- subset_taxa(
    GlobalPatterns,
    GlobalPatterns@tax_table[, 1] == "Bacteria"
  )
  GPsubset <- subset_taxa(
    GPsubset,
    rowSums(GPsubset@otu_table) > 20000
  )
  GPsubset <- subset_taxa(
    GPsubset,
    rowSums(is.na(GPsubset@tax_table)) == 0
  )
  GPsubset@sam_data$human <- GPsubset@sam_data$SampleType %in%
    c("Skin", "Feces", "Tong")
  res_iNEXT <- iNEXT_pq(
    GPsubset,
    merge_sample_by = "human",
    q = 1,
    datatype = "abundance",
    nboot = 2
  )
  iNEXT::ggiNEXT(res_iNEXT)
  iNEXT::ggiNEXT(res_iNEXT, type = 2)
  iNEXT::ggiNEXT(res_iNEXT, type = 3)
}

```

---

is\_cutadapt\_installed *Test if cutadapt is installed.*

---

**Description**

Useful for testthat and examples compilation for R CMD CHECK and test coverage

**Usage**

```

is_cutadapt_installed(
  args_before_cutadapt =
    "source ~/miniconda3/etc/profile.d/conda.sh && conda activate cutadaptenv && "
)

```

**Arguments**

args\_before\_cutadapt  
 : (String) A one line bash command to run before to run cutadapt. For examples,  
 "source ~/miniconda3/etc/profile.d/conda.sh && conda activate cutadaptenv &&"  
 allow to bypass the conda init which asks to restart the shell

**Value**

A logical that say if cutadapt is install in

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
MiscMetabar::is_cutadapt_installed()
```

---

*is\_falco\_installed*      *Test if falco is installed.*

---

**Description**

Useful for testthat and examples compilation for R CMD CHECK and test coverage

**Usage**

```
is_falco_installed(path = "falco")
```

**Arguments**

path                    (default: falco) Path to falco

**Value**

A logical that say if falco is install in

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
MiscMetabar::is_falco_installed()
```

---

is\_krona\_installed      *Test if krona is installed.*

---

**Description**

Useful for testthat and examples compilation for R CMD CHECK and test coverage

**Usage**

```
is_krona_installed(path = "ktImportKrona")
```

**Arguments**

path                    (default: krona) Path to krona

**Value**

A logical that say if krona is install in

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
MiscMetabar::is_krona_installed()
```

---

is\_mumu\_installed      *Test if mumu is installed.*

---

**Description**

Useful for testthat and examples compilation for R CMD CHECK and test coverage

**Usage**

```
is_mumu_installed(path = "mumu")
```

**Arguments**

path                    (default: mumu) Path to mumu

**Value**

A logical that say if mumu is install in



**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
MiscMetabar::is_mumu_installed()
```

---

*is\_swarm\_installed*      *Test if swarm is installed.*

---

**Description**

Useful for testthat and examples compilation for R CMD CHECK and test coverage

**Usage**

```
is_swarm_installed(path = "swarm")
```

**Arguments**

path                    (default: swarm) Path to falco

**Value**

A logical that say if swarm is install in

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
MiscMetabar::is_swarm_installed()
```

---

`is_vsearch_installed` *Test if vsearch is installed.*

---

**Description**

Useful for testthat and examples compilation for R CMD CHECK and test coverage

**Usage**

```
is_vsearch_installed(path = "vsearch")
```

**Arguments**

`path` (default: `vsearch`) Path to vsearch

**Value**

A logical that say if vsearch is install in

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
MiscMetabar::is_vsearch_installed()
```

---

`krona` *Make Krona files using Rhref[https://github.com/marbl/Krona/wikiKronaTools](https://github.com/marbl/Krona/wiki/KronaTools).*

---

**Description**

Need the installation of kronatools on the computer ([installation instruction](#)).

**Usage**

```
krona(  
  physeq,  
  file = "krona.html",  
  nb_seq = TRUE,  
  ranks = "All",  
  add_unassigned_rank = 0,  
  name = NULL  
)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
file	(required) the location of the html file to save
nb_seq	(logical) If true, Krona set the distribution of sequences in the taxonomy. If False, Krona set the distribution of ASVs in the taxonomy.
ranks	Number of the taxonomic ranks to plot (num of the column in <code>tax_table</code> slot of your physeq object). Default setting plot all the ranks (argument 'All').
add_unassigned_rank	(int) Add unassigned for rank inferior to 'add_unassigned_rank' when necessary.
name	A name for intermediary files, Useful to name your krona result files before merging using <a href="#">merge_krona()</a> . Must not contain space.

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [Krona](#) if you use this function.

## Value

A html file

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## See Also

[merge\\_krona](#)

## Examples

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
GA <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, Phylum == "Acidobacteria")
## Not run:
krona(GA, "Number.of.sequences.html")
krona(GA, "Number.of.ASVs.html", nb_seq = FALSE)
merge_krona(c("Number.of.sequences.html", "Number.of.ASVs.html"))

## End(Not run)
```

---

`LCBD_pq`*Compute and test local contributions to beta diversity (LCBD) of samples*

---

**Description**

A wrapper for the `adespatial::beta.div()` function in the case of physeq object.

**Usage**

```
LCBD_pq(physeq, p_adjust_method = "BH", ...)
```

**Arguments**

`physeq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
`p_adjust_method` (chr, default "BH"): the method used to adjust p-value  
... Additional arguments passed on to `adespatial::beta.div()` function

**Value**

An object of class `beta.div` see `adespatial::beta.div()` function for more information

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `adespatial::beta.div()` if you use this function.

**See Also**

[plot\\_LCBD\\_pq](#), `adespatial::beta.div()`

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("adespatial")) {  
  res <- LCBD_pq(data_fungi_sp_known, nperm = 5)  
  str(res)  
  length(res$LCBD)  
  length(res$SCBD)  
}  
  
if (requireNamespace("adespatial")) {  
  LCBD_pq(data_fungi_sp_known, nperm = 5, method = "jaccard")  
}
```

---

learn_idtaxa	<i>A wrapper of</i> <a href="#">DECIPHER::LearnTaxa()</a>
--------------	---

---

### Description

This function is basically a wrapper of functions [DECIPHER::LearnTaxa\(\)](#), please cite the DECIPHER package if you use this function.

### Usage

```
learn_idtaxa(
  fasta_for_training,
  output_Rdata = NULL,
  output_path_only = FALSE,
  unite = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

fasta_for_training	A fasta file (can be gzip) to train the trainingSet using the function <a href="#">learn_idtaxa()</a> . Only used if trainingSet is NULL. The reference database must contain taxonomic information in the header of each sequence in the form of a string starting with ";tax=" and followed by a comma-separated list of up to nine taxonomic identifiers. The only exception is if unite=TRUE. In that case the UNITE taxonomy is automatically formatted.
output_Rdata	A vector naming the path to an output Rdata file. If left to NULL, no Rdata file is written.
output_path_only	(logical, default FALSE). If TRUE, the function return only the path to the output_Rdata file. Note that output_Rdata must be set.
unite	(logical, default FALSE). If set to TRUE, the fasta_for_training file is formatted from UNITE format to syntax one, needed in fasta_for_training. Only used if trainingSet is NULL.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">DECIPHER::LearnTaxa()</a>

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to [DECIPHER::LearnTaxa\(\)](#) if you use this function.

### Value

Either a Taxa Train object (see [DECIPHER::LearnTaxa\(\)](#)) or, if output\_path\_only is TRUE, a vector indicating the path to the output training object.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**[assign\\_idtaxa\(\)](#)**Examples**

```
## Not run:
training_mini_UNITE_fungi <-
  learn_idtaxa(fasta_for_training = system.file("extdata",
    "mini_UNITE_fungi.fasta.gz",
    package = "MiscMetabar"
  ))
plot(training_mini_UNITE_fungi)

training_100sp_UNITE <-
  learn_idtaxa(
    fasta_for_training = system.file("extdata",
    "100_sp_UNITE_sh_general_release_dynamic.fasta",
    package = "MiscMetabar"
  ),
  unite = TRUE
)

plot(training_100sp_UNITE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

`list_fastq_files`*List fastq files*

---

**Description**

Useful for targets bioinformatic pipeline.

**Usage**

```
list_fastq_files(
  path,
  paired_end = TRUE,
  pattern = "fastq",
  pattern_R1 = "_R1_",
  pattern_R2 = "_R2_",
  nb_files = Inf
)
```

### Arguments

path	path to files (required)
paired_end	do you have paired_end files? (default TRUE)
pattern	a pattern to filter files (passed on to list.files function).
pattern_R1	a pattern to filter R1 files (default "R1")
pattern_R2	a pattern to filter R2 files (default "R2")
nb_files	the number of fastq files to list (default FALSE)

### Value

a list of one (single end) or two (paired end) list of files files are sorted by names (default behavior of `list.files()`)

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
list_fastq_files(system.file("extdata", package = "MiscMetabar"))
list_fastq_files(system.file("extdata", package = "MiscMetabar"),
  paired_end = FALSE, pattern_R1 = ""
)
```

---

lulu

*Post Clustering Curation of Amplicon Data.*

---

### Description

The original function and documentation was written by Tobias Guldberg Frøslev in the **lulu** package.

This algorithm lulu consumes an OTU table and a matchlist, and evaluates cooccurrence of 'daughters' (potential analytical artefacts) and their 'parents' (~= real biological species/OTUs). The algorithm requires an OTU table (species/site matrix), and a match list. The OTU table can be made with various r-packages (e.g. DADA2) or external pipelines (VSEARCH, USEARCH, QIIME, etc.), and the match-list can be made with external bioinformatic tools like VSEARCH, USEARCH, BLASTN or another algorithm for pair-wise sequence matching.

**Usage**

```

lulu(
  otu_table,
  matchlist,
  minimum_ratio_type = "min",
  minimum_ratio = 1,
  minimum_match = 84,
  minimum_relative_cooccurrence = 0.95,
  progress_bar = TRUE,
  log_conserved = FALSE
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>otu_table</code>	a data.frame with with an OTU table that has sites/samples as columns and OTUs (unique OTU id's) as rows, and observations as read counts.
<code>matchlist</code>	a data.frame containing three columns: (1) OTU id of potential child, (2) OTU id of potential parent, (3) match - % identiti between the sequences of the potential parent and potential child OTUs. <b>NB: The matchlist is the product of a mapping of OTU sequences against each other. This is currently carried out by an external script in e.g. Blastn or VSEARCH, prior to running lulu!</b>
<code>minimum_ratio_type</code>	sets whether a potential error must have lower abundance than the parent in all samples <code>min</code> (default), or if an error just needs to have lower abundance on average <code>avg</code> . Choosing lower abundance on average over globally lower abundance will greatly increase the number of designated errors. This option was introduced to make it possible to account for non-sufficiently clustered intraspecific variation, but is not generally recommended, as it will also increase the potential of cluster well-separated, but co-occurring, sequence similar species.
<code>minimum_ratio</code>	sets the minimim abundance ratio between a potential error and a potential parent to be identified as an error. If the <code>minimum_ratio_type</code> is set to <code>min</code> (default), the <code>minimum_ratio</code> applies to the lowest observed ration across the samples. If the <code>minimum_ratio_type</code> is set to <code>avg</code> (default), the <code>minimum_ratio</code> applies to the mean of observed ration across the samples. <code>avg</code> . (default is 1).
<code>minimum_match</code>	minimum threshold of sequence similarity for considering any OTU as an error of another can be set (default 84%).
<code>minimum_relative_cooccurrence</code>	minimum co-occurrence rate, i.e. the lower rate of occurrence of the potential error explained by co-occurrence with the potential parent for considering error state.
<code>progress_bar</code>	(Logical, default TRUE) print progress during the calculation or not.
<code>log_conserved</code>	(Logical, default FALSE) conserved log files written in the disk

**Details**

Please cite the lulu original paper: <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41467-017-01312-x>



**Value**

Function lulu returns a list of results based on the input OTU table and match list.

- `curated_table` - a curated OTU table with daughters merged with their matching parents.
- `curated_count` - number of curated (parent) OTUs.
- `curated_otus` - ids of the OTUs that were accepted as valid OTUs.
- `discarded_count` - number of discarded (merged with parent) OTUs.
- `discarded_otus` - ids of the OTUs that were identified as errors (daughters) and merged with respective parents.
- `runtime` - time used by the script.
- `minimum_match` - the id threshold (minimum match \ by user).
- `minimum_relative_cooccurrence` - minimum ratio of daughter-occurrences explained by co-occurrence with parent (set by user).
- `otu_map` - information of which daughters were mapped to which parents.
- `original_table` - original OTU table.

The matchlist is the product of a mapping of OTU sequences against each other. This is currently carried out by an external script in e.g. BLASTN or VSEARCH, prior to running lulu! Producing the match list requires a file with all the OTU sequences (centroids) - e.g. OTUcentroids.fasta. The matchlist can be produced by mapping all OTUs against each other with an external algorithm like VSEARCH or BLASTN. In VSEARCH a matchlist can be produced e.g. with the following command: `vsearch --usearch_global OTUcentroids.fasta --db OTUcentroids.fasta --strand plus --self --id .80 --iddef 1 --userout matchlist.txt --userfields query+target+id --maxaccepts 0 --query_cov .9 --maxhits 10`. In BLASTN a matchlist can be produced e.g. with the following commands. First we produce a blast-database from the fasta file: `makeblastdb -in OTUcentroids.fasta -parse_seqids -dbtype nucl`, then we match the centroids against that database: `blastn -db OTUcentroids.fasta -num_threads 10 -outfmt '6 qseqid sseqid pident' -out matchlist.txt -qcov_hsp_perc .90 -perc_identity .84 -query OTUcentroids.fasta`

**Author(s)**

Tobias Guldberg Frøslev (orcid: [0000-0002-3530-013X](https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3530-013X)), modified by Adrien Taudière

---

lulu\_pq

*Lulu reclustering of class physeq*

---

**Description**

See <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41467-017-01312-x> for more information on the method.

**Usage**

```

lulu_pq(
  physeq,
  nproc = 1,
  id = 0.84,
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  verbose = FALSE,
  clean_pq = FALSE,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE,
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
nproc	(default 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for the clustering
id	(default: 0.84) id for <code>-usearch_global</code> .
vsearchpath	(default: vsearch) path to vsearch.
verbose	(logical) If true, print some additional messages.
clean_pq	(logical) If true, empty samples and empty ASV are discarded before clustering.
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files
...	Additional arguments passed on to function <a href="#">lulu()</a>

**Details**

The version of LULU is a fork of Adrien Taudière (<https://github.com/adrientaudiere/lulu>) from <https://github.com/tobiasgf/lulu>

**Value**

a list of for object

- "new\_physeq": The new phyloseq object (class physeq)
- "discrepancy\_vector": A vector of discrepancy showing for each taxonomic level the proportion of identic value before and after lulu reclustering. A value of 0.6 stands for 60% of ASV before re-clustering have identical value after re-clustering. In other word, 40% of ASV are assigned to a different taxonomic value. NA value are not counted as discrepancy.
- "res\_lulu": A list of the result from the lulu function
- "merged\_ASV": the data.frame used to merged ASV

**Author(s)**

Tobias Guldberg Frøslev <[tobiasgf@snm.ku.dk](mailto:tobiasgf@snm.ku.dk)> & Adrien Taudière <[adrien.taudiere@zaclys.net](mailto:adrien.taudiere@zaclys.net)>

## References

- LULU : <https://github.com/adrientaudiere/lulu> forked from <https://github.com/tobiasgf/lulu>.
- VSEARCH can be downloaded from <https://github.com/torognes/vsearch>.

## See Also

[mumu\\_pq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
lulu_pq(data_fungi_sp_known)
```

---

merge\_krona

*Merge Krona files using [Rhrefhttps://github.com/marbl/Krona/wikiKronaTools](https://github.com/marbl/Krona/wiki/KronaTools).*

---

## Description

Need the installation of kronatools on the computer ([installation instruction](#)).

Function merge\_krona allows merging multiple html files in one interactive krona file

Note that you need to use the name args in krona() function before merge\_krona() in order to give good name to each krona pie in the output.

## Usage

```
merge_krona(files = NULL, output = "mergeKrona.html")
```

## Arguments

files	(required) path to html files to merged
output	path to the output file

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [Krona](#) if you use this function.

## Value

A html file

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**[krona](#)**Examples**

```
## Not run:
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
GA <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, Phylum == "Acidobacteria")
krona(GA, "Number.of.sequences.html", name = "Nb_seq_GP_acidobacteria")
krona(GA, "Number.of.ASVs.html", nb_seq = FALSE, name = "Nb_asv_GP_acidobacteria")
merge_krona(c("Number.of.sequences.html", "Number.of.ASVs.html"), "mergeKrona.html")
unlink(c("Number.of.sequences.html", "Number.of.ASVs.html", "mergeKrona.html"))

## End(Not run)
```

merge\_samples2

*Merge samples by a sample variable or factor***Description**

Firstly release in the [speedyseq](#) R package by Michael R. McLaren.

This function provides an alternative to `phyloseq::merge_samples()` that better handles sample variables of different types, especially categorical sample variables. It combines the samples in `x` defined by the sample variable or factor group by summing the abundances in `otu_table(x)` and combines sample variables by the summary functions in `funs`. The default summary function, `unique_or_na()`, collapses the values within a group to a single unique value if it exists and otherwise returns NA. The new (merged) samples are named by the values in group.

**Usage**

```
merge_samples2(
  x,
  group,
  fun_otu = sum,
  funs = list(),
  reorder = FALSE,
  default_fun = unique_or_na
)

## S4 method for signature 'phyloseq'
merge_samples2(
  x,
  group,
  fun_otu = sum,
  funs = list(),
  reorder = FALSE,
```

```

    default_fun = unique_or_na
  )

## S4 method for signature 'otu_table'
merge_samples2(
  x,
  group,
  fun_otu = sum,
  reorder = FALSE,
  default_fun = unique_or_na
)

## S4 method for signature 'sample_data'
merge_samples2(
  x,
  group,
  funs = list(),
  reorder = FALSE,
  default_fun = unique_or_na
)

```

### Arguments

x	A phyloseq, otu_table, or sample_data object
group	A sample variable or a vector of length nsamples(x) defining the sample grouping. A vector must be supplied if x is an otu_table
fun_otu	Function for combining abundances in the otu_table; default is sum. Can be a formula to be converted to a function by <code>purrr::as_mapper()</code>
funs	Named list of merge functions for sample variables; default is unique_or_na
reorder	Logical specifying whether to reorder the new (merged) samples by name
default_fun	Default functions if funs is not set. Per default the function unique_or_na is used. See <code>diff_fct_diff_class()</code> for a useful alternative.

### Value

A new phyloseq-class, otu\_table or sam\_data object depending on the class of the x param

### Author(s)

Michael R. McLaren (orcid: [0000-0003-1575-473X](https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1575-473X)) modified by Adrien Taudiere

### Examples

```

data(enterotype)

# Merge samples with the same project and clinical status
ps <- enterotype
sample_data(ps) <- sample_data(ps) %>%

```

```

transform(Project.ClinicalStatus = Project:ClinicalStatus)
sample_data(ps) %>% head()
ps0 <- merge_samples2(ps, "Project.ClinicalStatus",
  fun_otu = mean,
  funs = list(Age = mean)
)
sample_data(ps0) %>% head()

```

---

merge_taxa_vec	<i>Merge taxa in groups (vectorized version)</i>
----------------	--

---

## Description

Firstly release in the [speedyseq](#) R package by Michael R. McLaren.

Merge taxa in  $x$  into a smaller set of taxa defined by the vector group. Taxa whose value in group is NA will be dropped. New taxa will be named according to the most abundant taxon in each group (phyloseq and otu\_table objects) or the first taxon in each group (all other phyloseq component objects).

If  $x$  is a phyloseq object with a phylogenetic tree, then the new taxa will be ordered as they are in the tree. Otherwise, the taxa order can be controlled by the reorder argument, which behaves like the reorder argument in `base::rowsum()`. `reorder = FALSE` will keep taxa in the original order determined by when the member of each group first appears in `taxa_names(x)`; `reorder = TRUE` will order new taxa according to their corresponding value in group.

The `tax_adjust` argument controls the handling of taxonomic disagreements within groups. Setting `tax_adjust == 0` causes no adjustment; the taxonomy of the new group is set to the archetype taxon (see below). Otherwise, disagreements within a group at a given rank cause the values at lower ranks to be set to NA. If `tax_adjust == 1` (the default), then a rank where all taxa in the group are already NA is not counted as a disagreement, and lower ranks may be kept if the taxa agree. This corresponds to the original phyloseq behavior. If `tax_adjust == 2`, then these NAs are treated as a disagreement; all ranks are set to NA after the first disagreement or NA.

## Usage

```

merge_taxa_vec(x, group, reorder = FALSE, tax_adjust = 1L)

## S4 method for signature 'phyloseq'
merge_taxa_vec(x, group, reorder = FALSE, tax_adjust = 1L)

## S4 method for signature 'otu_table'
merge_taxa_vec(x, group, reorder = FALSE)

## S4 method for signature 'taxonomyTable'
merge_taxa_vec(x, group, reorder = FALSE, tax_adjust = 1L)

## S4 method for signature 'phylo'
merge_taxa_vec(x, group)

```

```
## S4 method for signature 'XStringSet'  
merge_taxa_vec(x, group, reorder = FALSE)
```

### Arguments

x	A phyloseq object or component object
group	A vector with one element for each taxon in physeq that defines the new groups. see <code>base::rowsum()</code> .
reorder	Logical specifying whether to reorder the taxa by their group values. Ignored if x has (or is) a phylogenetic tree.
tax_adjust	0: no adjustment; 1: phyloseq-compatible adjustment; 2: conservative adjustment

### Value

A new phyloseq-class, otu\_table, tax\_table, XStringset or sam\_data object depending on the class of the x param

### Author(s)

Michael R. McLaren (orcid: [0000-0003-1575-473X](https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1575-473X)) modified by Adrien Taudiere

### See Also

Function in MiscMetabar that use this function: [postcluster\\_pq\(\)](#)  
[base::rowsum\(\)](#)  
[phyloseq::merge\\_taxa\(\)](#)

---

MiscMetabar-deprecated

*Deprecated function(s) in the MiscMetabar package*

---

### Description

These functions are provided for compatibility with older version of the MiscMetabar package. They may eventually be completely removed.

### Usage

```
physeq_graph_test(...)
```

### Arguments

... Parameters to be passed on to the modern version of the function

**Value**

Depend on the functions.

**Details**

<a href="#">graph_test_pq</a>	now a synonym for physeq_graph_test
<a href="#">adonis_pq</a>	now a synonym for adonis_phyloseq
<a href="#">clean_pq</a>	now a synonym for clean_phyloseq
<a href="#">lulu_pq</a>	now a synonym for lulu_phyloseq
<a href="#">circle_pq</a>	now a synonym for otu_circle
<a href="#">biplot_pq</a>	now a synonym for biplot_physeq
<a href="#">read_pq</a>	now a synonym for read_phyloseq
<a href="#">write_pq</a>	now a synonym for write_phyloseq
<a href="#">sankey_pq</a>	now a synonym for sankey_phyloseq
<a href="#">summary_plot_pq</a>	now a synonym for summary_plot_phyloseq
<a href="#">plot_edgeR_pq</a>	now a synonym for plot_edgeR_phyloseq
<a href="#">plot_deseq2_pq</a>	now a synonym for plot_deseq2_phyloseq
<a href="#">venn_pq</a>	now a synonym for venn_phyloseq
<a href="#">ggvenn_pq</a>	now a synonym for ggVenn_phyloseq
<a href="#">hill_tuckey_pq</a>	now a synonym for hill_tuckey_phyloseq
<a href="#">hill_pq</a>	now a synonym for hill_phyloseq
<a href="#">heat_tree_pq</a>	now a synonym for physeq_heat_tree
<a href="#">compare_pairs_pq</a>	now a synonym for multiple_share_bisamples

---

multipatt\_pq

*Test and plot multipatt result*


---

**Description**

A wrapper for the `indicspecies::multipatt()` function in the case of physeq object.

**Usage**

```

multipatt_pq(
  physeq,
  fact,
  p_adjust_method = "BH",
  pval = 0.05,
  control = permute::how(nperm = 999),
  ...
)

```



**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
 fact (required) Name of the factor in physeq@sam\_data used to plot different lines  
 p\_adjust\_method (chr, default "BH"): the method used to adjust p-value  
 pval (int, default 0.05): the value to determine the significance of LCBD  
 control see `?indicspecies::multipatt()`  
 ... Additional arguments passed on to `indicspecies::multipatt()` function

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `indicspecies::multipatt()` if you use this function.

**Value**

A `ggplot2` object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

if (requireNamespace("indicspecies")) {
  data(data_fungi)
  data_fungi_ab <- subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi, taxa_sums(data_fungi) > 10000)
  multipatt_pq(subset_samples(data_fungi_ab, !is.na(Time)), fact = "Time")
}

if (requireNamespace("indicspecies")) {
  multipatt_pq(subset_samples(data_fungi_ab, !is.na(Time)),
    fact = "Time",
    max.order = 1, control = permute::how(nperm = 99)
  )
}

```

---

multiplot

*Multiple plot function*


---

**Description**

`ggplot` objects can be passed in `...`, or to `plotlist` (as a list of `ggplot` objects)

If the layout is something like `matrix(c(1,2,3,3), nrow=2, byrow=TRUE)`, then plot 1 will go in the upper left, 2 will go in the upper right, and 3 will go all the way across the bottom.

**Usage**

```
multiplot(..., plotlist = NULL, cols = 1, layout = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

... list of ggplot objects  
 plotlist list of ggplot objects  
 cols number of columns  
 layout A matrix specifying the layout. If present, 'cols' is ignored.

**Value**

Nothing. Print the list of ggplot objects

---

multitax_bar_pq	<i>Plot taxonomic distribution across 3 taxonomic levels and optionally one sample factor</i>
-----------------	---

---

**Description**

Note that lv13 need to be nested in lv12 which need to be nested in lv11

**Usage**

```
multitax_bar_pq(  
  physeq,  
  lv11,  
  lv12,  
  lv13,  
  fact = NULL,  
  nb_seq = TRUE,  
  log10trans = TRUE  
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
 lv11 (required) Name of the first (higher) taxonomic rank of interest  
 lv12 (required) Name of the second (middle) taxonomic rank of interest  
 lv13 (required) Name of the first (lower) taxonomic rank of interest  
 fact Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam\_data. If not set, the taxonomic distribution is plot for all samples together.  
 nb\_seq (logical; default TRUE) If set to FALSE, only the number of ASV is count. Concretely, physeq otu\_table is transformed in a binary otu\_table (each value different from zero is set to one)  
 log10trans (logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, the number of sequences (or ASV if nb\_seq = FALSE) is log10 transformed.

**Value**

A ggplot2 object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("ggh4x")) {
  multitax_bar_pq(data_fungi_sp_known, "Phylum", "Class", "Order", "Time")
  multitax_bar_pq(data_fungi_sp_known, "Phylum", "Class", "Order")
  multitax_bar_pq(data_fungi_sp_known, "Phylum", "Class", "Order",
    nb_seq = FALSE, log10trans = FALSE
  )
}
```

---

multi\_biplot\_pq

*Visualization of a collection of couples of samples for comparison*


---

**Description**

This allow to plot all the possible `biplot_pq()` combination using one factor.

**Usage**

```
multi_biplot_pq(physeq, split_by = NULL, pairs = NULL, na_remove = TRUE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
split_by	(required if pairs is NULL) the name of the factor to make all combination of couples of values
pairs	(required if split_by is NULL) the name of the factor in physeq@sam_data slot to make plot by pairs of samples. Each level must be present only two times. Note that if you set pairs, you also must set fact arguments to passed on to <a href="#">biplot_pq()</a> .
na_remove	(logical, default TRUE) if TRUE remove all the samples with NA in the split_by variable of the physeq@sam_data slot
...	Other parameters passed on to <a href="#">biplot_pq()</a>

**Value**

a list of ggplot object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
data_fungi_abun <- subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi, taxa_sums(data_fungi) > 10000)
p <- multi_biplot_pq(data_fungi_abun, "Height")
lapply(p, print)
```

mumu\_pq

*MUMU reclustering of class physeq***Description**

See <https://www.nature.com/articles/s41467-017-01312-x> for more information on the original method LULU. This is a wrapper of **mumu** a C++ re-implementation of LULU by Frédéric Mahé

**Usage**

```
mumu_pq(
  physeq,
  nproc = 1,
  id = 0.84,
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  mumupath = "mumu",
  verbose = FALSE,
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
nproc	(default 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for the clustering
id	(default: 0.84) id for <code>-usearch_global</code> .
vsearchpath	(default: vsearch) path to vsearch.
mumupath	path to mumu. See <b>mumu</b> for installation instruction
verbose	(logical) If true, print some additional messages.
clean_pq	(logical) If true, empty samples and empty ASV are discarded before clustering.
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [mumu](#) and [lulu](#) if you use this function for your work.

## Value

a list of for object

- "new\_physeq": The new phyloseq object (class physeq)
- "mumu\_results": The log file of the mumu software. Run `man mumu` into bash to obtain details about columns' signification.

## Author(s)

Frédéric Mahé & Adrien Taudière <[adrien.taudiere@zaclys.net](mailto:adrien.taudiere@zaclys.net)>

## References

- MUMU: <https://github.com/frederic-mahe/mumu>
- VSEARCH can be downloaded from <https://github.com/torognes/vsearch>.

## See Also

[lulu\\_pq\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
## Not run:  
mumu_pq(data_fungi_sp_known)  
  
## End(Not run)
```

---

normalize\_prop\_pq      *Normalize OTU table using samples depth*

---

## Description

This function implement the method proposed by McKnight et al. 2018 ([doi:10.5061/dryad.tn8qs35](https://doi.org/10.5061/dryad.tn8qs35))

## Usage

```
normalize_prop_pq(physeq, base_log = 2, constante = 10000, digits = 4)
```

**Arguments**

phyloseq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
base_log	(integer, default 2) the base for log-transformation. If set to NULL or NA, no log-transformation is compute after normalization.
constante	a constante to multiply the otu_table values
digits	(default = 2) integer indicating the number of decimal places to be used (see ?round for more information)

**Value**

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object with otu\_table count normalize and log transformed (if base\_log is an integer)

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
taxa_sums(data_fungi_mini)
data_f_norm <- normalize_prop_pq(data_fungi_mini)
taxa_sums(data_f_norm)
ggplot(data.frame(
  "norm" = scale(taxa_sums(data_f_norm)),
  "raw" = scale(taxa_sums(data_fungi_mini)),
  "name_otu" = taxa_names(data_f_norm)
)) +
  geom_point(aes(x = raw, y = norm))

data_f_norm <- normalize_prop_pq(data_fungi_mini, base_log = NULL)
```

---

no\_legend

*Discard legend in ggplot2*

---

**Description**

A more memorable shortcut for theme(legend.position = "none").

**Usage**

```
no_legend()
```

**Value**

A ggplot2 object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
plot_refseq_pq(data_fungi)
plot_refseq_pq(data_fungi) + no_legend()
```

---

perc                                      *Convert a value (or a fraction x/y) in percentage*

---

**Description**

Mostly for internal use.

**Usage**

```
perc(x, y = NULL, accuracy = 0, add_symbol = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

x	(required): value
y	if y is set, compute the division of x by y
accuracy	number of digits (number of digits after zero)
add_symbol	if set to TRUE add the % symbol to the value

**Value**

The percentage value (number or character if add\_symbol is set to TRUE)

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

---

phyloseq\_to\_edgeR      *Convert phyloseq OTU count data into DGEList for edgeR package*

---

### Description

Convert phyloseq OTU count data into DGEList for edgeR package

### Usage

```
phyloseq_to_edgeR(physeq, group, method = "RLE", ...)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
group	(required) A character vector or factor giving the experimental group/condition for each sample/library. Alternatively, you may provide the name of a sample variable. This name should be among the output of <code>sample_variables(physeq)</code> , in which case <code>get_variable(physeq, group)</code> would return either a character vector or factor. This is passed on to <a href="#">DGEList</a> , and you may find further details or examples in its documentation.
method	The label of the edgeR-implemented normalization to use. See <a href="#">calcNormFactors</a> for supported options and details. The default option is "RLE", which is a scaling factor method proposed by Anders and Huber (2010). At time of writing, the <a href="#">edgeR</a> package supported the following options to the method argument: <code>c("TMM", "RLE", "upperquartile", "none")</code> .
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">DGEList</a>

### Value

A DGEList object. See [edgeR::estimateTagwiseDisp\(\)](#) for more details.

---

physeq\_or\_string\_to\_dna  
*Return a DNASTringSet object from either a character vector of DNA sequences or the refseq slot of a phyloseq-class object*

---

### Description

Internally used in [vsearch\\_clustering\(\)](#), [swarm\\_clustering\(\)](#) and [postcluster\\_pq\(\)](#).

### Usage

```
physeq_or_string_to_dna(physeq = NULL, dna_seq = NULL)
```



**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

dna\_seq You may directly use a character vector of DNA sequences in place of physeq args. When physeq is set, dna sequences take the value of physeq@refseq

**Value**

An object of class DNASTringSet (see the [Biostrings::DNASTringSet\(\)](#) function)

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[Biostrings::DNASTringSet\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
dna <- physeq_or_string_to_dna(data_fungi)
dna

sequences_ex <- c(
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGGGCGAATTAATAACGAATTCATTGAATCA",
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGGGCGAATTACCTGGTAAGGCCCACTT",
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGGGCGAATTACCTGGTAGAGGTG",
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACC",
  "CGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACCTGGTATTTTAGCCCACTTACCCGGTACCATGAGGTG",
  "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACCTGG",
  "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACAAAG",
  "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACAAAG",
  "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACAAAG"
)
dna2 <- physeq_or_string_to_dna(dna_seq = sequences_ex)
dna2
```

---

plot\_ancombc\_pq

*Plot ANCOMBC2 result for phyloseq object*

---

**Description**

Graphical representation of ANCOMBC2 result.

**Usage**

```
plot_ancombc_pq(
  physeq,
  ancombc_res,
  filter_passed = TRUE,
  filter_diff = TRUE,
  min_abs_lfc = 0,
  tax_col = "Genus",
  tax_label = "Species",
  add_marginal_violplot = TRUE,
  add_label = TRUE,
  add_hline_cut_lfc = NULL
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
ancombc_res	(required) the result of the ancombc_pq function For the moment only bimodal factors are possible.
filter_passed	(logical, default TRUE) Do we filter using the column passed_ss? The passed_ss value is TRUE if the taxon passed the sensitivity analysis, i.e., adding different pseudo-counts to 0s would not change the results.
filter_diff	(logical, default TRUE) Do we filter using the column diff? The diff value is TRUE if the taxon is significant (has q less than alpha)
min_abs_lfc	(integer, default 0) Minimum absolute value to filter results based on Log Fold Change. For ex. a value of 1 filter out taxa for which the abundance in a given level of the modality is not at least the double of the abundance in the other level.
tax_col	The taxonomic level (must be present in tax_table slot) to color the points
tax_label	The taxonomic level (must be present in tax_table slot) to add label
add_marginal_violplot	(logical, default TRUE) Do we add a marginal violplot representing all the taxa lfc from ancombc_res.
add_label	(logical, default TRUE) Do we add a label?
add_hline_cut_lfc	(logical, default NULL) Do we add two horizontal lines when min_abs_lfc is set (different from zero)?

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to ANCOMBC: : ancombc2() if you use this function.

**Value**

A ggplot2 object. If add\_marginal\_violplot is TRUE, this is a patchworks of plot made using patchwork::plot\_layout().

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
if (requireNamespace("mia")) {
  data_fungi_mini@tax_table <- phyloseq::tax_table(cbind(
    data_fungi_mini@tax_table,
    "taxon" = taxa_names(data_fungi_mini)
  ))

  res_time <- ancombc_pq(
    data_fungi_mini,
    fact = "Time",
    levels_fact = c("0", "15"),
    tax_level = "taxon",
    verbose = TRUE
  )

  plot_ancombc_pq(data_fungi_mini, res_time,
    filter_passed = FALSE,
    tax_label = "Genus", tax_col = "Order"
  )
  plot_ancombc_pq(data_fungi_mini, res_time, tax_col = "Genus")
  plot_ancombc_pq(data_fungi_mini, res_time,
    filter_passed = FALSE,
    filter_diff = FALSE, tax_col = "Family", add_label = FALSE
  )
}

## End(Not run)
```

---

plot\_complexity\_pq

*Plot kmer complexity of references sequences of a phyloseq object*


---

**Description**

Basically a wrapper of `dada2::seqComplexity()`

**Usage**

```
plot_complexity_pq(
  physeq,
  kmer_size = 2,
  window = NULL,
  by = 5,
  bins = 100,
  aggregate = FALSE,
```

```

    vline_random_kmer = TRUE,
    ...
  )

```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
kmer_size	int (default 2) The size of the kmers (or "oligonucleotides" or "words") to use.
window	(int, default NULL) The width in nucleotides of the moving window. If NULL the whole sequence is used.
by	(int, default 5) The step size in nucleotides between each moving window tested.
bins	(int, default 100). The number of bins to use for the histogram.
aggregate	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, compute an aggregate quality profile for all samples
vline_random_kmer	(logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, add a vertical line at the value for random kmer (equal to $4^{\text{kmerSize}}$ )
...	Arguments passed on to <code>geom_histogram</code> .

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to [dada2::seqComplexity\(\)](#)

### Value

A `ggplot2` object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[dada2::seqComplexity\(\)](#), [dada2::plotComplexity\(\)](#)

### Examples

```

plot_complexity_pq(subset_samples(data_fungi_mini, Height == "High"),
  vline_random_kmer = FALSE
)
# plot_complexity_pq(subset_samples(data_fungi_mini, Height == "Low"),
# aggregate = FALSE, kmer_size = 4
# )
# plot_complexity_pq(subset_samples(data_fungi, Height == "Low"),
# kmer_size = 4)

```

---

plot\_deseq2\_pq                      *Plot DESeq2 results for a phyloseq or a DESeq2 object.*

---

### Description

Graphical representation of DESeq2 analysis.

### Usage

```
plot_deseq2_pq(
  data,
  contrast = NULL,
  tax_table = NULL,
  pval = 0.05,
  taxolev = "Genus",
  select_taxa = NULL,
  color_tax = "Phylum",
  tax_depth = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  jitter_width = 0.1,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

data	(required) a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> or a <a href="#">DESeqDataSet-class</a> object.
contrast	(required) contrast specifies what comparison to extract from the object to build a results table. See <a href="#">results</a> man page for more details.
tax_table	Required if data is a <a href="#">DESeqDataSet-class</a> object. The taxonomic table used to find the taxa and color_taxa arguments. If data is a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object, data@tax_table is used.
pval	(default: 0.05) the significance cutoff used for optimizing the independent filtering. If the adjusted p-value cutoff (FDR) will be a value other than 0.05, pval should be set to that value.
taxolev	taxonomic level of interest
select_taxa	Either the name of the taxa (in the form of <a href="#">DESeq2::results()</a> ) or a logical vector (length of the results from <a href="#">DESeq2::results()</a> ) to select taxa to plot.
color_tax	taxonomic level used for color or a color vector.
tax_depth	Taxonomic depth to test for differential distribution among contrast. If Null the analysis is done at the OTU (i.e. Species) level. If not Null, data need to be a column name in the tax_table slot of the <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object.
verbose	whether the function print some information during the computation
jitter_width	width for the jitter positioning
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">DESeq</a> or <a href="#">ggplot</a>

**Details**

Please cite DESeq2 package if you use this function.

**Value**

A [ggplot2](#) plot representing DESeq2 results

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[DESeq](#)  
[results](#)  
[plot\\_edgeR\\_pq](#)

**Examples**

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
GP <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, GlobalPatterns@tax_table[, 1] == "Archaea")
GP <- subset_samples(GP, SampleType %in% c("Soil", "Skin"))
if (requireNamespace("DESeq2")) {
  res <- DESeq2::DESeq(phyloseq_to_deseq2(GP, ~SampleType),
    test = "Wald", fitType = "local"
  )
  plot_deseq2_pq(res, c("SampleType", "Soil", "Skin"),
    tax_table = GP@tax_table, color_tax = "Kingdom"
  )
  plot_deseq2_pq(res, c("SampleType", "Soil", "Skin"),
    tax_table = GP@tax_table, color_tax = "Kingdom",
    pval = 0.7
  )
  plot_deseq2_pq(res, c("SampleType", "Soil", "Skin"),
    tax_table = GP@tax_table, color_tax = "Class",
    select_taxa = c("522457", "271582")
  )
}
```

---

plot\_edgeR\_pq

*Plot edgeR results for a phyloseq or a edgeR object.*

---

**Description**

Graphical representation of edgeR result.

**Usage**

```
plot_edgeR_pq(  
  physeq,  
  contrast = NULL,  
  pval = 0.05,  
  taxolev = "Genus",  
  color_tax = "Phylum",  
  verbose = TRUE,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
contrast	(required): This argument specifies what comparison to extract from the object to build a results table. See <a href="#">results</a> man page for more details.
pval	(default: 0.05): the significance cutoff used for optimizing the independent filtering. If the adjusted p-value cutoff (FDR) will be a value other than 0.05, pval should be set to that value.
taxolev	taxonomic level of interest
color_tax	taxonomic level used for color assignation
verbose	(logical): whether the function print some information during the computation
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">exactTest</a> or <a href="#">ggplot</a>

**Value**

A [ggplot2](#) plot representing edgeR results

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[exactTest](#)  
[plot\\_deseq2\\_pq](#)

**Examples**

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")  
GP_archae <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, GlobalPatterns@tax_table[, 1] == "Archaea")  
  
if (requireNamespace("edgeR")) {  
  plot_edgeR_pq(GP_archae, c("SampleType", "Soil", "Feces"),  
    color_tax = "Kingdom"  
  )  
  
  plot_edgeR_pq(GP_archae, c("SampleType", "Soil", "Feces"),
```

```
    taxolev = "Class", color_tax = "Kingdom"
  )
}
```

---

plot_guild_pq	<i>Plot information about Guild from tax_table slot previously created with <a href="#">add_funguild_info()</a></i>
---------------	---

---

### Description

Graphical function.

### Usage

```
plot_guild_pq(physeq, levels_order = NULL, clean_pq = TRUE, ...)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
levels_order	(Default NULL) A character vector to reorder the levels of guild. See examples.
clean_pq	(logical, default TRUE): Does the phyloseq object is cleaned using the <a href="#">clean_pq()</a> function?
...	Other params for be passed on to <a href="#">clean_pq()</a> function

### Value

A ggplot2 object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[add\\_funguild\\_info\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
## Not run:
# to avoid bug in CRAN when internet is not available
if (requireNamespace("httr")) {
  d_fung_mini <- add_funguild_info(data_fungi_mini,
    taxLevels = c(
      "Domain",
      "Phylum",
      "Class",
```



```

      "Order",
      "Family",
      "Genus",
      "Species"
    )
  )
  sort(table(d_fung_mini@tax_table[, "guild"]), decreasing = TRUE)

  p <- plot_guild_pq(d_fung_mini)
  if (requireNamespace("patchwork")) {
    (plot_guild_pq(subset_samples(d_fung_mini, Height == "Low"),
      levels_order = p$data$Guild[order(p$data$nb_seq)]
    ) + theme(legend.position = "none")) +
    (plot_guild_pq(subset_samples(d_fung_mini, Height == "High"),
      levels_order = p$data$Guild[order(p$data$nb_seq)]
    ) + ylab("")) + theme(axis.text.y = element_blank())
  }
}

## End(Not run)

```

---

plot\_LCBD\_pq

*Plot and test local contributions to beta diversity (LCBD) of samples*


---

## Description

A wrapper for the `adespatial::beta.div()` function in the case of physeq object.

## Usage

```

plot_LCBD_pq(
  physeq,
  p_adjust_method = "BH",
  pval = 0.05,
  sam_variables = NULL,
  only_plot_significant = TRUE,
  ...
)

```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
p_adjust_method	(chr, default "BH"): the method used to adjust p-value
pval	(int, default 0.05): the value to determine the significance of LCBD
sam_variables	A vector of variable names present in the <code>sam_data</code> slot to plot alongside the LCBD value
only_plot_significant	(logical, default TRUE) Do we plot all LCBD values or only the significant ones
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">adespatial::beta.div()</a> function

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `vegan::beta.div()` if you use this function.

**Value**

A ggplot2 object build with the package patchwork

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[LCBD\\_pq](#), [adespatial::beta.div\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data(data_fungi)
if (requireNamespace("adespatial")) {
  plot_LCBD_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    nperm = 100, only_plot_significant = FALSE,
    pval = 0.2
  )
}

if (requireNamespace("adespatial")) {
  plot_LCBD_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    nperm = 100, only_plot_significant = TRUE,
    pval = 0.2
  )
  if (requireNamespace("patchwork")) {
    plot_LCBD_pq(data_fungi_mini,
      nperm = 100, only_plot_significant = FALSE,
      sam_variables = c("Time", "Height")
    )
    plot_LCBD_pq(data_fungi_mini,
      nperm = 100, only_plot_significant = TRUE, pval = 0.2,
      sam_variables = c("Time", "Height", "Tree_name")
    ) &
    theme(
      legend.key.size = unit(0.4, "cm"),
      legend.text = element_text(size = 10),
      axis.title.x = element_text(size = 6)
    )
  }
}
```

---

plot_mt	<i>Plot the result of a mt test</i> <a href="#">phyloseq::mt()</a>
---------	--

---

### Description

Graphical representation of mt test.

### Usage

```
plot_mt(mt = NULL, alpha = 0.05, color_tax = "Class", taxa = "Species")
```

### Arguments

mt	(required) Result of a mt test from the function <a href="#">phyloseq::mt()</a> .
alpha	(default: 0.05) Choose the cut off p-value to plot taxa.
color_tax	(default: "Class") A taxonomic level to color the points.
taxa	(default: "Species") The taxonomic level you choose for x-positioning.

### Value

a [ggplot2](#) plot of result of a mt test

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[phyloseq::mt\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
data_fungi_mini2 <- subset_samples(data_fungi_mini, !is.na(Time))
res <- mt(data_fungi_mini2, "Time", method = "fdr", test = "f", B = 300)
plot_mt(res)
plot_mt(res, taxa = "Genus", color_tax = "Order")
```

---

`plot_refseq_extremity_pq`*Plot the nucleotide proportion at both extremity of the sequences*

---

### Description

It is a useful function to check for the absence of unwanted patterns caused for example by Illumina adaptator or bad removal of primers.

If `hill_scale` is not null, Hill diversity number are used to represent the distribution of the diversity (equitability) along the sequences.

### Usage

```
plot_refseq_extremity_pq(  
  physeq,  
  first_n = 10,  
  last_n = 10,  
  hill_scales = c(1, 2),  
  min_width = 0  
)
```

### Arguments

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
<code>first_n</code>	(int, default 10) The number of nucleotides to plot the 5' extremity.
<code>last_n</code>	(int, default 10) The number of nucleotides to plot the 3' extremity.
<code>hill_scales</code>	(vector) A vector defining the Hill number wanted. Set to NULL if you don't want to plot Hill diversity metrics.
<code>min_width</code>	(int, default 0) Select only the sequences from <code>physeq@refseq</code> with using a minimum length threshold. If <code>first_n</code> is superior to the minimum length of the references sequences, you must use <code>min_width</code> to filter out the narrower sequences

### Value

A list of 4 objects

- `p_start` and `p_last` are the ggplot object representing respectively the start and the end of the sequences.
- `df_start` and `df_last` are the data.frame corresponding to the ggplot object.

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

res1 <- plot_refseq_extremity_pq(data_fungi)
names(res1)
res1$plot_start
res1$plot_last

res2 <- plot_refseq_extremity_pq(data_fungi, first_n = 200, last_n = 100)
res2$plot_start
res2$plot_last

plot_refseq_extremity_pq(data_fungi,
  first_n = 400,
  min_width = 400,
  hill_scales = NULL
)$plot_start +
  geom_line(aes(y = value, x = seq_id, color = name), alpha = 0.4, linewidth = 0.2)

plot_refseq_extremity_pq(data_fungi,
  first_n = NULL,
  last_n = 400,
  min_width = 400,
  hill_scales = c(3)
)$plot_last

```

---

plot\_refseq\_pq

*Plot the nucleotide proportion of references sequences*


---

**Description**

It is a wrapper of the function `plot_refseq_extremity_pq()`. See `?plot_refseq_extremity_pq` for more examples.

If `hill_scale` is not null, Hill diversity number are used to represent the distribution of the diversity (equitability) along the sequences.

**Usage**

```

plot_refseq_pq(
  physeq,
  hill_scales = NULL,
  first_n = min(Biostrings::width(physeq@refseq)),
  last_n = NULL,
  min_width = first_n
)

```

**Arguments**

`physeq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

hill_scales	(vector) A vector defining the Hill number wanted. Set to NULL if you don't want to plot Hill diversity metrics.
first_n	(int, default 10) The number of nucleotides to plot the 5' extremity.
last_n	(int, default 10) The number of nucleotides to plot the 3' extremity.
min_width	(int, default 0) Select only the sequences from physeq@refseq with using a minimum length threshold. If first_n is superior to the minimum length of the references sequences, you must use min_width to filter out the narrower sequences

**Value**

A ggplot2 object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
plot_refseq_pq(data_fungi)
plot_refseq_pq(data_fungi, hill_scales = c(2), first_n = 300)
```

---

plot\_SCBD\_pq

*Plot species contributions to beta diversity (SCBD) of samples*

---

**Description**

A wrapper for the `adespatial::beta.div()` function in the case of physeq object.

**Usage**

```
plot_SCBD_pq(
  physeq,
  tax_level = "Taxa",
  tax_col = "Order",
  min_SCBD = 0.01,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
tax_level	Taxonomic level to used in y axis
tax_col	Taxonomic level to colored points
min_SCBD	(default 0.01) the minimum SCBD value to plot the taxa
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">adespatial::beta.div()</a> function

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `vegan::beta.div()` if you use this function.

**Value**

A `ggplot2` object build with the package `patchwork`

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[LCBD\\_pq](#), [adespatial::beta.div\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data(data_fungi)
if (requireNamespace("adespatial")) {
  plot_SCBD_pq(data_fungi) +
    geom_text(aes(label = paste(Genus, Species)), hjust = 1, vjust = 2) +
    xlim(c(0, NA))
}

if (requireNamespace("adespatial")) {
  plot_SCBD_pq(data_fungi, tax_level = "Class", tax_col = "Phylum", min_SCBD = 0) +
    geom_jitter()
}
```

---

plot\_tax\_pq

*Plot taxonomic distribution in function of a factor with stacked bar in %*

---

**Description**

An alternative to `phyloseq::plot_bar()` function.

**Usage**

```
plot_tax_pq(
  physeq,
  fact = NULL,
  merge_sample_by = NULL,
  type = "nb_seq",
  taxa_fill = "Order",
```

```

print_values = TRUE,
color_border = "lightgrey",
linewidth = 0.1,
prop_print_value = 0.01,
nb_print_value = NULL,
add_info = TRUE,
na_remove = TRUE,
clean_pq = TRUE
)

```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam_data.
merge_sample_by	a vector to determine which samples to merge using the <a href="#">merge_samples2()</a> function. Need to be in physeq@sam_data
type	If "nb_seq" (default), the number of sequences is used in plot. If "nb_taxa", the number of ASV is plotted. If both, return a list of two plots, one for nbSeq and one for ASV.
taxa_fill	(default: 'Order'): Name of the taxonomic rank of interest
print_values	(logical, default TRUE): Do we print some values on plot?
color_border	color for the border
linewidth	The line width of geom_bar
prop_print_value	minimal proportion to print value (default 0.01)
nb_print_value	number of higher values to print (replace prop_print_value if both are set).
add_info	(logical, default TRUE) Do we add title and subtitle with information about the total number of sequences and the number of samples per modality.
na_remove	(logical, default TRUE) if TRUE remove all the samples with NA in the split_by variable of the physeq@sam_data slot
clean_pq	(logical) If set to TRUE, empty samples are discarded after subsetting ASV

### Value

A ggplot2 object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[tax\\_bar\\_pq\(\)](#) and [multitax\\_bar\\_pq\(\)](#)



**Examples**

```
data(data_fungi_sp_known)
plot_tax_pq(data_fungi_sp_known,
  "Time",
  merge_sample_by = "Time",
  taxa_fill = "Class"
)

plot_tax_pq(data_fungi_sp_known,
  "Height",
  merge_sample_by = "Height",
  taxa_fill = "Class",
  na_remove = TRUE,
  color_border = rgb(0, 0, 0, 0)
)

plot_tax_pq(data_fungi_sp_known,
  "Height",
  merge_sample_by = "Height",
  taxa_fill = "Class",
  na_remove = FALSE,
  clean_pq = FALSE
)
```

---

plot\_tsne\_pq

*Plot a tsne low dimensional representation of a phyloseq object*

---

**Description**

Partially inspired by `phylosmith::tsne_phyloseq()` function developed by Schuyler D. Smith.

**Usage**

```
plot_tsne_pq(
  physeq,
  method = "bray",
  dims = 2,
  theta = 0,
  perplexity = 30,
  fact = NA,
  ellipse_level = 0.95,
  plot_dims = c(1, 2),
  na_remove = TRUE,
  force_factor = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
method	A method to calculate distance using <code>vegan::vegdist()</code> function (default: "bray")
dims	(Int) Output dimensionality (default: 2)
theta	(Numeric) Speed/accuracy trade-off (increase for less accuracy), set to 0.0 for exact TSNE (default: 0.0 see details in the man page of <code>Rtsne::Rtsne</code> ).
perplexity	(Numeric) Perplexity parameter (should not be bigger than $3 * \text{perplexity} < \text{nrow}(X) - 1$ , see details in the man page of <code>Rtsne::Rtsne</code> )
fact	Name of the column in <code>physeq@sam_data</code> used to color points and compute ellipses.
ellipse_level	The level used in <code>stat_ellipse</code> . Set to NULL to discard ellipse (default = 0.95)
plot_dims	A vector of 2 values defining the rank of dimension to plot (default: <code>c(1,2)</code> )
na_remove	(logical, default TRUE) Does the samples with NA values in fact are removed? (default: true)
force_factor	(logical, default TRUE) Force the fact column to be a factor.
...	Additional arguments passed on to <code>Rtsne::Rtsne()</code>

**Value**

A ggplot object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
data(data_fungi)
if (requireNamespace("Rtsne")) {
  plot_tsne_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Height", perplexity = 15)
}

if (requireNamespace("Rtsne")) {
  plot_tsne_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Time") + geom_label(aes(label = Sample_id, fill = Time))
  plot_tsne_pq(data_fungi, fact = "Time", na_remove = FALSE, force_factor = FALSE)
}
```

---

plot\_var\_part\_pq      *Plot the partition the variation of a phyloseq object*

---

### Description

Graphical representation of the partition of variation obtain with `var_par_pq()`.

### Usage

```
plot_var_part_pq(
  res_varpart,
  cutoff = 0,
  digits = 1,
  digits_quantile = 2,
  fill_bg = c("seagreen3", "mediumpurple", "blue", "orange"),
  show_quantiles = FALSE,
  filter_quantile_zero = TRUE,
  show_dbrda_signif = FALSE,
  show_dbrda_signif_pval = 0.05,
  alpha = 63,
  id.size = 1.2,
  min_prop_pval_signif_dbrda = 0.95
)
```

### Arguments

<code>res_varpart</code>	(required) the result of the functions <code>var_par_pq()</code> or <code>var_par_rarperm_pq()</code>
<code>cutoff</code>	The values below cutoff will not be displayed.
<code>digits</code>	The number of significant digits.
<code>digits_quantile</code>	The number of significant digits for quantile.
<code>fill_bg</code>	Fill colours of ellipses.
<code>show_quantiles</code>	Do quantiles are printed ?
<code>filter_quantile_zero</code>	Do we filter out value with quantile encompassing the zero value?
<code>show_dbrda_signif</code>	Do dbrda significance for each component is printed using *?
<code>show_dbrda_signif_pval</code>	(float, [0:1]) The value under which the dbrda is considered significant.
<code>alpha</code>	(int, [0:255]) Transparency of the fill colour.
<code>id.size</code>	A numerical value giving the character expansion factor for the names of circles or ellipses.
<code>min_prop_pval_signif_dbrda</code>	(float, [0:1]) Only used if using the result of <code>var_par_rarperm_pq()</code> function. The * for <code>dbrda_signif</code> is only add if at least <code>min_prop_pval_signif_dbrda</code> of permutations show significance.

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `vegan::varpart()` if you use this function.

**Value**

A plot

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[var\\_par\\_rarperm\\_pq\(\)](#), [var\\_par\\_pq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("vegan")) {
  data_fungi_woNA <- subset_samples(data_fungi, !is.na(Time) & !is.na(Height))
  res_var_9 <- var_par_rarperm_pq(
    data_fungi_woNA,
    list_component = list(
      "Time" = c("Time"),
      "Size" = c("Height", "Diameter")
    ),
    nperm = 9,
    dbrda_computation = TRUE
  )
  res_var_2 <- var_par_rarperm_pq(
    data_fungi_woNA,
    list_component = list(
      "Time" = c("Time"),
      "Size" = c("Height", "Diameter")
    ),
    nperm = 2,
    dbrda_computation = TRUE
  )
  res_var0 <- var_par_pq(data_fungi_woNA,
    list_component = list(
      "Time" = c("Time"),
      "Size" = c("Height", "Diameter")
    ),
    dbrda_computation = TRUE
  )
  plot_var_part_pq(res_var0, digits_quantile = 2, show_dbrda_signif = TRUE)
  plot_var_part_pq(res_var_9,
    digits_quantile = 2, show_quantiles = TRUE,
    show_dbrda_signif = TRUE
  )
  plot_var_part_pq(
    res_var_2,
```

```

    digits = 5,
    digits_quantile = 2,
    cutoff = 0,
    show_quantiles = TRUE
  )
}

```

---

postcluster_pq	<i>Recluster sequences of an object of class physeq or a list of DNA sequences</i>
----------------	--

---

## Description

This function use the merge\_taxa\_vec function to merge taxa into clusters.

## Usage

```

postcluster_pq(
  physeq = NULL,
  dna_seq = NULL,
  nproc = 1,
  method = "clusterize",
  id = 0.97,
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  tax_adjust = 0,
  vsearch_cluster_method = "--cluster_size",
  vsearch_args = "--strand both",
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE,
  swarmpath = "swarm",
  d = 1,
  swarm_args = "--fastidious",
  method_clusterize = "overlap",
  ...
)

asv2otu(
  physeq = NULL,
  dna_seq = NULL,
  nproc = 1,
  method = "clusterize",
  id = 0.97,
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  tax_adjust = 0,
  vsearch_cluster_method = "--cluster_size",
  vsearch_args = "--strand both",
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE,

```

```

    swarnpath = "swarm",
    d = 1,
    swarm_args = "--fastidious",
    method_clusterize = "overlap",
    ...
)

```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
dna_seq	You may directly use a character vector of DNA sequences in place of physeq args. When physeq is set, dna sequences take the value of physeq@refseq
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for the clustering
method	(default: clusterize) Set the clustering method. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• clusterize use the <a href="#">DECIPHER::Clusterize()</a> fonction,</li> <li>• vsearch use the vsearch software (<a href="https://github.com/torognes/vsearch">https://github.com/torognes/vsearch</a>) with arguments <code>--cluster_size</code> by default (see args <code>vsearch_cluster_method</code>) and <code>-strand both</code> (see args <code>vsearch_args</code>)</li> <li>• swarm use the swarm</li> </ul>
id	(default: 0.97) level of identity to cluster
vsearchpath	(default: vsearch) path to vsearch
tax_adjust	(Default 0) See the man page of <a href="#">merge_taxa_vec()</a> for more details. To conserved the taxonomic rank of the most abundant taxa (ASV, OTU,...), set tax_adjust to 0 (default). For the moment only tax_adjust = 0 is robust
vsearch_cluster_method	(default: "--cluster_size) See other possible methods in the <a href="#">vsearch manual</a> (e.g. <code>--cluster_size</code> or <code>--cluster_smallmem</code> ) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>--cluster_fast</code> : Clusterize the fasta sequences in filename, automatically sort by decreasing sequence length beforehand.</li> <li>• <code>--cluster_size</code> : Clusterize the fasta sequences in filename, automatically sort by decreasing sequence abundance beforehand.</li> <li>• <code>--cluster_smallmem</code> : Clusterize the fasta sequences in filename without automatically modifying their order beforehand. Sequence are expected to be sorted by decreasing sequence length, unless <code>-usersort</code> is used. In that case you may set <code>vsearch_args</code> to <code>vsearch_args = "-strand both -usersort"</code></li> </ul>
vsearch_args	(default : "-strand both") a one length character element defining other parameters to passed on to vsearch.
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• temp.fasta (refseq in fasta or dna_seq sequences)</li> <li>• cluster.fasta (centroid if method = "vsearch")</li> <li>• temp.uc (clusters if method = "vsearch")</li> </ul>
swarnpath	(default: swarm) path to swarm

d	(default: 1) maximum number of differences allowed between two amplicons, meaning that two amplicons will be grouped if they have d (or less) differences
swarm_args	(default : "-fastidious") a one length character element defining other parameters to passed on to swarm See other possible methods in the <a href="#">SWARM pdf manual</a>
method_clusterize	(default "overlap") the method for the <code>DECIPHER::Clusterize()</code> method
...	Additional arguments passed on to <code>DECIPHER::Clusterize()</code>

### Details

This function use the `merge_taxa_vec` function to merge taxa into clusters. By default `tax_adjust = 0`. See the man page of `merge_taxa_vec()`.

### Value

A new object of class `physeq` or a list of cluster if `dna_seq` args was used.

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### References

VSEARCH can be downloaded from <https://github.com/torognes/vsearch>. More information in the associated publication <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27781170>.

### See Also

`vsearch_clustering()` and `swarm_clustering()`

### Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("DECIPHER")) {
  postcluster_pq(data_fungi_mini)
}

if (requireNamespace("DECIPHER")) {
  postcluster_pq(data_fungi_mini, method_clusterize = "longest")

  if (MiscMetabar::is_swarm_installed()) {
    d_swarm <- postcluster_pq(data_fungi_mini, method = "swarm")
  }
  if (MiscMetabar::is_vsearch_installed()) {
    d_vs <- postcluster_pq(data_fungi_mini, method = "vsearch")
  }
}
```

---

psmelt\_samples\_pq      *Build a sample information tibble from physeq object*

---

### Description

Hill numbers are the number of equiprobable species giving the same diversity value as the observed distribution.

Note that contrary to `hill_pq()`, this function does not take into account for difference in the number of sequences per samples/modalities. You may use `rarefy_by_sample = TRUE` if the mean number of sequences per samples differs among modalities.

### Usage

```
psmelt_samples_pq(
  physeq,
  hill_scales = c(0, 1, 2),
  filter_zero = TRUE,
  rarefy_by_sample = FALSE,
  taxa_ranks = NULL
)
```

### Arguments

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <code>phyloseq-class</code> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
<code>hill_scales</code>	(a vector of integer) The list of q values to compute the hill number $H^q$ . If Null, no hill number are computed. Default value compute the Hill number 0 (Species richness), the Hill number 1 (exponential of Shannon Index) and the Hill number 2 (inverse of Simpson Index).
<code>filter_zero</code>	(logical, default TRUE) Do we filter non present OTU from samples ? For the moment, this has no effect on the result because the dataframe is grouped by samples with abundance summed across OTU.
<code>rarefy_by_sample</code>	(logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, rarefy samples using <code>phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()</code> function.
<code>taxa_ranks</code>	A vector of taxonomic ranks. For examples <code>c("Family","Genus")</code> . If taxa ranks is not set (default value = NULL), taxonomic information are not present in the resulting tibble.

### Value

A tibble with a row for each sample. Columns provide information from `sam_data` slot as well as hill numbers, Abundance (nb of sequences), and `Abundance_log10` ( $\log_{10}(1+Abundance)$ ).

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière



## Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("ggstatsplot")) {  
  psm_tib <- psmelt_samples_pq(data_fungi_mini, hill_scales = c(0, 2, 7))  
  ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats(psm_tib, Height, Hill_0)  
  ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats(psm_tib, Height, Hill_7)  
  
  psm_tib_tax <- psmelt_samples_pq(data_fungi_mini, taxa_ranks = c("Class", "Family"))  
  ggplot(filter(psm_tib_tax, Abundance > 2000), aes(y = Family, x = Abundance, fill = Time)) +  
    geom_bar(stat = "identity") +  
    facet_wrap(~Height)  
}
```

---

rarefy\_sample\_count\_by\_modality

*Rarefy (equalize) the number of samples per modality of a factor*

---

## Description

This function randomly draw the same number of samples for each modality of factor. It is useful to disentangle the effect of different number of samples per modality on diversity. Internally used in [accu\\_plot\\_balanced\\_modality\(\)](#).

## Usage

```
rarefy_sample_count_by_modality(physeq, fact, rngseed = FALSE, verbose = TRUE)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required): The variable to rarefy. Must be present in the sam_data slot of the physeq object.
rngseed	(Optional). A single integer value passed to set.seed, which is used to fix a seed for reproducibly random number generation (in this case, reproducibly random subsampling). If set to FALSE, then no iddling with the RNG seed is performed, and it is up to the user to appropriately call
verbose	(logical). If TRUE, print additional information.

## Value

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object.

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## See Also

[accu\\_plot\\_balanced\\_modality\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

table(data_fungi_mini@sam_data$Height)
data_fungi_mini2 <- rarefy_sample_count_by_modality(data_fungi_mini, "Height")
table(data_fungi_mini2@sam_data$Height)
if (requireNamespace("patchwork")) {
  ggvenn_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Height") + ggvenn_pq(data_fungi_mini2, "Height")
}

```

---

read_pq	<i>Read phyloseq object from multiple csv tables and a phylogenetic tree in Newick format.</i>
---------	--

---

**Description**

This is the reverse function of [write\\_pq\(\)](#).

**Usage**

```

read_pq(
  path = NULL,
  taxa_are_rows = FALSE,
  sam_names = NULL,
  sep_csv = "\t",
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

path	(required) a path to the folder to read the phyloseq object
taxa_are_rows	(default to FALSE) see <a href="#">?phyloseq</a> for details
sam_names	The name of the variable (column) in sam_data.csv to rename samples. Note that if you use <a href="#">write_phyloseq()</a> function to save your physeq object, you may use sam_names = "X" to rename the samples names as before.
sep_csv	(default tabulation) separator for column
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">utils::write.table()</a> function.

**Value**

One to four csv tables (refseq.csv, otu\_table.csv, tax\_table.csv, sam\_data.csv) and if present a phy\_tree in Newick format. At least the otu\_table.csv need to be present.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
write_pq(data_fungi, path = paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"))
read_pq(path = paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"))
unlink(paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"), recursive = TRUE)
```

---

rename_samples	<i>Rename the samples of a phyloseq slot</i>
----------------	--

---

**Description**

Useful for targets bioinformatic pipeline.

**Usage**

```
rename_samples(phyloseq_component, names_of_samples, taxa_are_rows = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

phyloseq\_component  
(required) one of otu\_table or sam\_data slot of a phyloseq-class object

names\_of\_samples  
(required) A vector of samples names

taxa\_are\_rows (default to FALSE) see ?phyloseq for details

**Value**

The otu\_table or the sam\_data slot with new samples names

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
otutab <- rename_samples(
  data_fungi@otu_table,
  paste0("data_f", sample_names(data_fungi))
)
otutab2 <- rename_samples(
  clean_pq(data_fungi,
    force_taxa_as_rows = TRUE
  )@otu_table,
  paste0("data_f", sample_names(data_fungi))
)
samda <- rename_samples(
  data_fungi@sam_data,
  paste0("data_f", sample_names(data_fungi))
)
```

rename\_samples\_otu\_table

*Rename samples of an otu\_table*

---

### Description

Useful for targets bioinformatic pipeline.

### Usage

```
rename_samples_otu_table(physeq, names_of_samples)
```

### Arguments

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
names\_of\_samples (required) The new names of the samples

### Value

the matrix with new colnames (or rownames if taxa\_are\_rows is true)

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
rename_samples_otu_table(data_fungi, as.character(seq_along(sample_names(data_fungi))))
```

---

reorder\_taxa\_pq

*Reorder taxa in otu\_table/tax\_table/refseq slot of a phyloseq object*

---

### Description

Note that the taxa order in a physeq object with a tree is locked by the order of leaf in the phylogenetic tree.

### Usage

```
reorder_taxa_pq(physeq, names_ordered, remove_phy_tree = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
 names\_ordered (required): Names of the taxa (must be the same as taxa in taxa\_names(physeq)) in a given order  
 remove\_phy\_tree (logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, the phylogenetic tree is removed. It is

**Value**

A phyloseq object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

data_fungi_ordered_by_genus <- reorder_taxa_pq(
  data_fungi,
  taxa_names(data_fungi)[order(as.vector(data_fungi@tax_table[, "Genus"]))]
)

data_fungi_mini_asc_ordered_by_abundance <- reorder_taxa_pq(
  data_fungi_mini,
  taxa_names(data_fungi_mini)[order(taxa_sums(data_fungi_mini))]
)

```

---

resolve\_vector\_ranks *Resolve conflict in a vector of taxonomy values*

---

**Description**

Internally used in the function [assign\\_blastn\(\)](#) with method="vote" and [assign\\_vsearch\\_lca\(\)](#) if top\_hits\_only is FALSE and vote\_algorithm is not NULL.

**Usage**

```

resolve_vector_ranks(
  vec,
  method = c("consensus", "rel_majority", "abs_majority", "preference", "unanimity"),
  strict = FALSE,
  second_method = c("consensus", "rel_majority", "abs_majority", "unanimity"),
  nb_agree_threshold = 1,
  preference_index = NULL,
  collapse_string = "/",
  replace_collapsed_rank_by_NA = FALSE
)

```

**Arguments**

<code>vec</code>	(required) A vector of (taxonomic) values
<code>method</code>	One of "consensus", "rel_majority", "abs_majority", "preference" or "unanimity". See details.
<code>strict</code>	(logical, default FALSE). If TRUE, NA are considered as informative in resolving conflict (i.e. NA are taking into account in vote). See details for more informations.
<code>second_method</code>	One of "consensus", "rel_majority", "abs_majority", or "unanimity". Only used if <code>method = "preference"</code> . See details.
<code>nb_agree_threshold</code>	(Int, default 1) The minimum number of times a value must arise to be selected using vote. If 2, we only kept taxonomic value present at least 2 times in the vector.
<code>preference_index</code>	(Int, default NULL). Required if <code>method="preference"</code> . Useless for other method. The preference index is the index of the value in <code>vec</code> for which we have a preference.
<code>collapse_string</code>	(default '/'). The character to collapse taxonomic names when multiple assignment is done.
<code>replace_collapsed_rank_by_NA</code>	(logical, default FALSE). If set to TRUE, all multiple assignments (all taxonomic rank including the 'collapse_string' parameter) are replaced by NA.

**Details**

- `unanimity`: Only keep taxonomic value when all methods are agree
  - By default, the value with NA are not taking into account (`strict=FALSE`)
  - If `strict`, one NA in the row is sufficient to return a NA
- `consensus`: Keep all taxonomic values separated by a '/' (separation can be modify using param `collapse_string`)
  - If `strict` is TRUE, NA are also added to taxonomic vector such as 'Tiger/Cat/NA' instead of 'Tiger/Cat'
- `abs_majority`: Keep the most found taxonomic value if it represent at least half of all taxonomic values.
  - If `strict` is TRUE, NA values are also count to determine the majority. For example, a vector of taxonomic rank `c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA)` will give a value of 'A' if `strict` is FALSE (default) but a value of NA if `strict` is TRUE.
- `rel_majority`: Keep the most found taxonomic value. In case of equality, apply a consensus strategy (collapse values separated by a '/') across the most found taxonomic values.
  - If `strict` is TRUE, NA are considered as a rank and can win the relative majority vote. If `strict` is FALSE (default), NA are removed before ranking the taxonomic values.
  - `nb_agree_threshold`: Only keep return value when at least x methods agreed with x is set by parameter `nb_agree_threshold`. By default, (`nb_agree_threshold = 1`): a majority of one is enough.

- preference: Keep the value from a preferred column.
  - when the value is NA in the preferred column, apply a second strategy (by default consensus) to the other column (parameter `second_method`). Note that the parameters `strict` and `nb_agree_threshold` are used for the `second_method` consensus.

### Value

a vector of length 1 (one character value)

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A"))
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A"),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 1
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A"), method = "abs_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A"), method = "rel_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A"),
  method = "rel_majority",
  nb_agree_threshold = 2
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A"), method = "unanimity")

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A"))
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A"),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 1
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A"), method = "abs_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A"), method = "rel_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A"), method = "unanimity")

resolve_vector_ranks(c(NA, NA, NA))
resolve_vector_ranks(c(NA, NA, NA),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 1
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c(NA, NA, NA), method = "abs_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c(NA, NA, NA), method = "rel_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c(NA, NA, NA), method = "unanimity")

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA))
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 1
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA), method = "rel_majority")

```

```

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA), method = "abs_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA, NA),
  method = "abs_majority",
  strict = FALSE
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA, NA),
  method = "abs_majority",
  strict = TRUE
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA), method = "unanimity")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", NA),
  method = "unanimity",
  strict = TRUE
)

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA))
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA), strict = TRUE)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 1
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA), method = "abs_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA), method = "rel_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA),
  method = "rel_majority",
  strict = TRUE
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA),
  method = "rel_majority",
  nb_agree_threshold = 2
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", NA), method = "unanimity")

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", NA, NA))
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", NA, NA), method = "rel_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", NA, NA), method = "unanimity")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", NA, NA),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 1
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", NA, NA),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 2
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", NA, "B"),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 2
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", NA, "B"),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 2, second_method = "abs_majority"
)

```



```

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", "B"))
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", "B"),
  method = "preference",
  preference_index = 1
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", "B"), method = "abs_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", "B"), method = "rel_majority")
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "B", "B"), method = "unanimity")

resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA))
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA),
  strict = TRUE
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA),
  method = "abs_majority"
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA),
  method = "abs_majority",
  strict = TRUE
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA),
  method = "preference", preference_index = 6, second_method = "abs_majority"
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA, NA),
  method = "preference", preference_index = 6, second_method = "abs_majority"
)
resolve_vector_ranks(c("A", "A", "A", "B", NA, NA, NA),
  method = "preference", preference_index = 6, second_method = "abs_majority",
  strict = TRUE
)

```

---

ridges\_pq

*Ridge plot of a phyloseq object*


---

## Description

Graphical representation of distribution of taxa across a factor using ridges.

## Usage

```

ridges_pq(
  physeq,
  fact,
  nb_seq = TRUE,
  log10trans = TRUE,
  tax_level = "Class",
  type = "density",
  ...
)

```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required) Name of the factor in physeq@sam_data used to plot different lines
nb_seq	(logical; default TRUE) If set to FALSE, only the number of ASV is count. Concretely, physeq otu_table is transformed in a binary otu_table (each value different from zero is set to one)
log10trans	(logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, the number of sequences (or ASV if nb_seq = FALSE) is log10 transformed.
tax_level	The taxonomic level to fill ridges
type	Either "density" (the default) or "ecdf" to plot a plot a cumulative version using <a href="#">ggplot2::stat_ecdf()</a>
...	Other params passed on to <a href="#">ggridges::geom_density_ridges()</a>

**Value**

A [ggplot2](#) plot with bar representing the number of sequence en each taxonomic groups

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("ggridges")) {
  ridges_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Time", alpha = 0.5, log10trans = FALSE) + xlim(c(0, 1000))
}

if (requireNamespace("ggridges")) {
  ridges_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Time", alpha = 0.5, scale = 0.9)
  ridges_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Time", alpha = 0.5, scale = 0.9, type = "ecdf")
  ridges_pq(data_fungi_mini, "Sample_names", log10trans = TRUE) + facet_wrap("~Height")

  ridges_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    "Time",
    jittered_points = TRUE,
    position = ggridges::position_points_jitter(width = 0.05, height = 0),
    point_shape = "|", point_size = 3, point_alpha = 1, alpha = 0.7,
    scale = 0.8
  )
}
```

---

rotl_pq	<i>rotl wrapper for phyloseq data</i>
---------	---------------------------------------

---

### Description

Make a phylogenetic tree using the ASV names of a phyloseq object and the Open Tree of Life tree.

### Usage

```
rotl_pq(phyloseq, species_colnames = "Genus_species", context_name = "All life")
```

### Arguments

`phyloseq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

`species_colnames` (default: "Genus\_species"): the name of the column where the species binominal name is stored in @tax\_table slot. Can also be a vector of two column names e.g. c("Genus", "Species")

`context_name` : can be used to select only a part of the Open Tree of Life. See `?rotl::tnrs_contexts()` for available values

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to rotl package if you use this function.

### Value

A plot

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("rotl")) {  
  tr <- rotl_pq(data_fungi_mini, species_colnames = "Genus_species")  
  plot(tr)  
  
  tr_Asc<- rotl_pq(data_fungi, species_colnames = "Genus_species", context_name = "Ascomycetes")  
  plot(tr_Asc)  
}
```

---

`sample_data_with_new_names`

*Load sample data from file and rename samples using names of samples and an optional order*

---

### Description

Useful for targets bioinformatic pipeline.

### Usage

```
sample_data_with_new_names(  
  file_path,  
  names_of_samples,  
  samples_order = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

### Arguments

`file_path` (required) a path to the sample\_data file  
`names_of_samples` (required) a vector of sample names  
`samples_order` Optional numeric vector to sort sample names  
... Additional arguments passed on to `utils::read.delim()` function.

### Value

A data.frame from `file_path` and new names

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[rename\\_samples\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
sam_file <- system.file("extdata", "sam_data.csv", package = "MiscMetabar")  
sample_data_with_new_names(sam_file, paste0("Samples_", seq(1, 185)))
```

---

 sam\_data\_matching\_names

*Match sample names from sam\_data and fastq files*


---

## Description

Useful for targets bioinformatic pipeline.

## Usage

```
sam_data_matching_names(
  path_sam_data,
  sample_col_name,
  path_raw_seq,
  pattern_remove_sam_data = NULL,
  pattern_remove_fastq_files = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  remove_undocumented_fastq_files = FALSE,
  prefix = NULL,
  ...
)
```

## Arguments

`path_sam_data` (Required) Path to sample data file.

`sample_col_name` (Required) The name of the column defining sample names in the sample data file.

`path_raw_seq` (Required) Path to the folder containing fastq files

`pattern_remove_sam_data` If not null, describe the pattern that will be deleted from sam\_data samples names.

`pattern_remove_fastq_files` If not null, describe the pattern that will be deleted from fastq files names.

`verbose` (logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, print some additional messages.

`remove_undocumented_fastq_files` (logical, default FALSE) If set to TRUE fastq files not present in sam\_data are removed from your folder. Keep a copy of those files somewhere before.

`prefix` Add a prefix to new samples names (ex. prefix = "samp")

`...` Other parameters passed on to `utils::read.csv()` function.

## Value

A list of two objects :

- `$sam_names_matching` is a tibble of corresponding samples names
- `$sam_data` is a sample data files including only matching sample names

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

sankey\_pq

*Sankey plot of [phyloseq-class](#) object***Description**

Graphical representation of distribution of taxa across Taxonomy and (optionnaly a factor).

**Usage**

```
sankey_pq(
  physeq = NULL,
  fact = NULL,
  taxa = 1:4,
  add_nb_seq = FALSE,
  min_prop_tax = 0,
  tax2remove = NULL,
  units = NULL,
  symbol2sub = c("\\.", "-"),
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam_data.
taxa	a vector of taxonomic rank to plot
add_nb_seq	Represent the number of sequences or the number of OTUs (add_nb_seq = FALSE). Note that plotting the number of sequences is slower.
min_prop_tax	(default: 0) The minimum proportion for taxa to be plotted. EXPERIMENTAL. For the moment each links below the min.prop. tax is discard from the sankey network resulting in sometimes weird plot.
tax2remove	a vector of taxonomic groups to remove from the analysis (e.g. c('Incertae sedis', 'unidentified'))
units	character string describing physical units (if any) for Value
symbol2sub	(default: c('\.', '-')) vector of symbol to delete in the taxonomy
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">sankeyNetwork</a>

**Value**

A [sankeyNetwork](#) plot representing the taxonomic distribution of OTUs or sequences. If fact is set, represent the distribution of the last taxonomic level in the modalities of fact

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**[sankeyNetwork](#), [ggaluv\\_pq\(\)](#)**Examples**

```

data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")
GP <- subset_taxa(GlobalPatterns, GlobalPatterns@tax_table[, 1] == "Archaea")
if (requireNamespace("networkD3")) {
  sankey_pq(GP, fact = "SampleType")
}

if (requireNamespace("networkD3")) {
  sankey_pq(GP, taxa = 1:4, min_prop_tax = 0.01)
  sankey_pq(GP, taxa = 1:4, min_prop_tax = 0.01, add_nb_seq = TRUE)
}

```

save\_pq

*A wrapper of write\_pq to save in all three possible formats***Description**

A wrapper of write\_pq to save in all three possible formats

**Usage**

```
save_pq(physeq, path = NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
path	a path to the folder to save the phyloseq object
...	Additional arguments passed on to <a href="#">write_pq()</a> or <a href="#">utils::write.table()</a> function.

**Details**

Write :

- 4 separate tables
- 1 table version
- 1 RData file

**Value**

Build a folder (in path) with four csv tables (refseq.csv, otu\_table.csv, tax\_table.csv, sam\_data.csv) + one table with all tables together + a rdata file (physeq.RData) that can be loaded using `base::load()` function + if present a phylogenetic tree in Newick format (phy\_tree.txt)

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[write\\_pq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
save_pq(data_fungi, path = paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"))
unlink(paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"), recursive = TRUE)
```

---

search\_exact\_seq\_pq    *Search for exact matching of sequences*

---

**Description**

Search for exact matching of sequences using complement, reverse and reverse-complement. It is useful to check for primers issues after cutadapt step.

**Usage**

```
search_exact_seq_pq(physeq, seq2search)
```

**Arguments**

physeq            (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
seq2search        A DNASTringSet object of sequences to search for.

**Value**

A list of data-frames for each input sequences with the name, the sequences and the number of occurrences of the original sequence, the complement sequence, the reverse sequence and the reverse-complement sequence.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière



**Examples**

```
data("data_fungi")
search_primers <- search_exact_seq_pq(data_fungi,
  seq2search = Biostrings::DNASTringSet(c("TTGAACGCACATTGCGCC", "ATCCCTACCTGATCCGAG"))
)
```

---

select_one_sample	<i>Select one sample from a physeq object</i>
-------------------	---

---

**Description**

Mostly for internal used, for example in function [track\\_wkflow\\_samples\(\)](#).

**Usage**

```
select_one_sample(physeq, sam_name, silent = FALSE)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
sam_name	(required) The sample name to select
silent	(logical) If true, no message are printing.

**Value**

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object with one sample

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
A8_005 <- select_one_sample(data_fungi, "A8-005_S4_MERGED.fastq.gz")
A8_005
```

---

 select\_taxa

*Select a subset of taxa in a specified order where possible*


---

### Description

Select (a subset of) taxa; if x allows taxa to be reordered, then taxa are given in the specified order.

### Usage

```
select_taxa(x, taxa, reorder = TRUE)

## S4 method for signature 'sample_data,character'
select_taxa(x, taxa)

## S4 method for signature 'otu_table,character'
select_taxa(x, taxa, reorder = TRUE)

## S4 method for signature 'taxonomyTable,character'
select_taxa(x, taxa, reorder = TRUE)

## S4 method for signature 'XStringSet,character'
select_taxa(x, taxa, reorder = TRUE)

## S4 method for signature 'phylo,character'
select_taxa(x, taxa)

## S4 method for signature 'phyloseq,character'
select_taxa(x, taxa, reorder = TRUE)
```

### Arguments

x	A phyloseq object or phyloseq component object
taxa	Character vector of taxa to select, in requested order
reorder	Logical specifying whether to use the order in taxa (TRUE) or keep the order in taxa_names(x) (FALSE)

### Details

This is a simple selector function that is like `prune_taxa(taxa, x)` when `taxa` is a character vector but always gives the taxa in the order `taxa` if possible (that is, except for `phy_tree`'s and `phyloseq` objects that contain `phy_tree`'s).

### Author(s)

Michael R. McLaren (orcid: [0000-0003-1575-473X](https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1575-473X))

---

signif_ancombc	<i>Filter ancombc_pq results</i>
----------------	----------------------------------

---

### Description

Internally used in [plot\\_ancombc\\_pq\(\)](#).

### Usage

```
signif_ancombc(  
  ancombc_res,  
  filter_passed = TRUE,  
  filter_diff = TRUE,  
  min_abs_lfc = 0  
)
```

### Arguments

ancombc_res	(required) the result of the ancombc_pq function For the moment only bimodal factors are possible.
filter_passed	(logical, default TRUE) Do we filter using the column passed_ss? The passed_ss value is TRUE if the taxon passed the sensitivity analysis, i.e., adding different pseudo-counts to 0s would not change the results.
filter_diff	(logical, default TRUE) Do we filter using the column diff? The diff value is TRUE if the taxon is significant (has q less than alpha)
min_abs_lfc	(integer, default 0) Minimum absolute value to filter results based on Log Fold Change. For ex. a value of 1 filter out taxa for which the abundance in a given level of the modality is not at least the double of the abundance in the other level.

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to ANCOMBC: : ancombc2() if you use this function.

### Value

A data.frame with the same number of columns than the ancombc\_res param but with less (or equal) numbers of rows

### See Also

[ancombc\\_pq\(\)](#), [plot\\_ancombc\\_pq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
if (requireNamespace("mia")) {
  data_fungi_mini@tax_table <- phyloseq::tax_table(cbind(
    data_fungi_mini@tax_table,
    "taxon" = taxa_names(data_fungi_mini)
  ))

  res_time <- ancombc_pq(
    data_fungi_mini,
    fact = "Time",
    levels_fact = c("0", "15"),
    tax_level = "taxon",
    verbose = TRUE
  )

  signif_ancombc(res_time)
}

## End(Not run)
```

---

simplify\_taxo

*Simplify taxonomy by removing some unused characters such as "k\_\_"*


---

**Description**

Internally used in [clean\\_pq\(\)](#)

**Usage**

```
simplify_taxo(
  physeq,
  pattern_to_remove = c("._", ".*:"),
  remove_space = TRUE,
  remove_NA = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

**physeq** (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

**pattern\_to\_remove** (a vector of character) the pattern to remove using [base::gsub\(\)](#) function.

**remove\_space** (logical; default TRUE): do we remove space?

**remove\_NA** (logical; default FALSE): do we remove NA (in majuscule)?

**Value**

A [phyloseq-class](#) object with simplified taxonomy

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
d_fm <- data_fungi_mini
d_fm@tax_table[, "Species"] <- paste0(rep(
  c("s_", "s:"),
  ntaxa(d_fm) / 2
), d_fm@tax_table[, "Species"])

# First column is the new vector of Species,
# second column is the column before simplification
cbind(
  simplify_taxo(d_fm@tax_table[, "Species"],
  d_fm@tax_table[, "Species"]
)
cbind(
  simplify_taxo(d_fm, remove_NA = TRUE)@tax_table[, "Species"],
  d_fm@tax_table[, "Species"]
)
```

---

SRS\_curve\_pq

*Scaling with ranked subsampling (SRS) curve of phyloseq object*

---

**Description**

A wrapper of [SRS::SRScurve\(\)](#) function.

**Usage**

```
SRS_curve_pq(physeq, clean_pq = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

`physeq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
`clean_pq` (logical): Does the phyloseq object is cleaned using the [clean\\_pq\(\)](#) function?  
... Additional arguments passed on to [SRS::SRScurve\(\)](#)

**Value**

A plot

**Examples**

```

if (requireNamespace("SRS")) {
  SRS_curve_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    max.sample.size = 200,
    rarefy.comparison = TRUE, rarefy.repeats = 3
  )
  SRS_curve_pq(data_fungi_mini, max.sample.size = 500, metric = "shannon")
}

```

---

subsample_fastq	<i>Subsample a fastq file copying the n_seq first sequences in a given folder</i>
-----------------	---

---

**Description**

Useful to test a pipeline on small fastq files.

**Usage**

```
subsample_fastq(fastq_files, folder_output = "subsample", nb_seq = 1000)
```

**Arguments**

fastq_files	The path to one fastq file or a list of fastq files (see examples)
folder_output	The path to a folder for output files
nb_seq	(int; default 1000) : Number of sequences kept (every sequence spread across 4 lines)

**Value**

Nothing, create subsampled fastq files in a folder

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

ex_file <- system.file("extdata", "ex_R1_001.fastq.gz",
  package = "MiscMetabar",
  mustWork = TRUE
)
subsample_fastq(ex_file, paste0(tempdir(), "/output_fastq"))
subsample_fastq(list_fastq_files(system.file("extdata", package = "MiscMetabar")),
  paste0(tempdir(), "/output_fastq"),
  n = 10
)
unlink(paste0(tempdir(), "/output_fastq"), recursive = TRUE)

```

---

subset_samples_pq	<i>Subset samples using a conditional boolean vector.</i>
-------------------	---

---

## Description

The main objective of this function is to complete the `phyloseq::subset_samples()` function by propose a more easy (but more prone to error) way of subset\_samples. It replace the subsetting expression which used the name of the variable in the sam\_data by a boolean vector.

Warnings: you must verify the result of this function as the boolean condition must match the order of samples in the sam\_data slot.

This function is robust when you use the sam\_data slot of the phyloseq object used in physeq (see examples)

## Usage

```
subset_samples_pq(physeq, condition)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
condition	A boolean vector to subset samples. Length must fit the number of samples

## Value

a new phyloseq object

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## Examples

```
cond_samp <- grepl("A1", data_fungi@sam_data[["Sample_names"]])
subset_samples_pq(data_fungi, cond_samp)

subset_samples_pq(data_fungi, data_fungi@sam_data[["Height"]] == "Low")
```

---

subset\_taxa\_pq                      *Subset taxa using a conditional named boolean vector.*

---

### Description

The main objective of this function is to complete the `phyloseq::subset_taxa()` function by propose a more easy way of subset\_taxa using a named boolean vector. Names must match taxa\_names.

### Usage

```
subset_taxa_pq(
  physeq,
  condition,
  verbose = TRUE,
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  taxa_names_from_physeq = FALSE
)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
condition	A named boolean vector to subset taxa. Length must fit the number of taxa and names must match taxa_names. Can also be a condition using a column of the tax_table slot (see examples). If the order of condition is the same as taxa_names(physeq), you can use the parameter taxa_names_from_physeq = TRUE.
verbose	(logical) Informations are printed
clean_pq	(logical) If set to TRUE, empty samples are discarded after subsetting ASV
taxa_names_from_physeq	(logical) If set to TRUE, rename the condition vector using taxa_names(physeq). Carefully check the result of this function if you use this parameter. No effect if the condition is of class tax_table.

### Value

a new phyloseq object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi, data_fungi@tax_table[, "Phylum"] == "Ascomycota")

cond_taxa <- grepl("Endophyte", data_fungi@tax_table[, "Guild"])
names(cond_taxa) <- taxa_names(data_fungi)
```



```
subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi, cond_taxa)

subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi, grepl("mycor", data_fungi@tax_table[, "Guild"]),
  taxa_names_from_physeq = TRUE
)
```

---

```
subset_taxa_tax_control
```

*Subset taxa using a taxa control or distribution based method*

---

## Description

There is 3 main methods : discard taxa (i) using a control taxa (e.g. truffle root tips), (ii) using a mixture models to detect bimodality in pseudo-abundance distribution or (iii) using a minimum difference threshold pseudo-abundance. Each cutoff is defined at the sample level.

## Usage

```
subset_taxa_tax_control(
  physeq,
  taxa_distri,
  method = "mean",
  min_diff_for_cutoff = NULL
)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
taxa_distri	(required) a vector of length equal to the number of samples with the number of sequences per sample for the taxa control
method	(default: "mean") a method to calculate the cut-off value. There are 6 available methods: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. cutoff_seq: discard taxa with less than the number of sequence than taxa control,</li> <li>2. cutoff_mixt: using mixture models,</li> <li>3. cutoff_diff: using a minimum difference threshold (need the argument min_diff_for_cutoff)</li> <li>4. min: the minimum of the three firsts methods</li> <li>5. max: the maximum of the three firsts methods</li> <li>6. mean: the mean of the three firsts methods</li> </ol>
min_diff_for_cutoff	(int) argument for method cutoff_diff. Required if method is cutoff_diff, min, max or mean

**Value**

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
subset_taxa_tax_control(data_fungi,
  as.numeric(data_fungi@otu_table[, 300]),
  min_diff_for_cutoff = 2
)
```

---

summary\_plot\_pq

*Summarize a [phyloseq-class](#) object using a plot.*


---

**Description**

Graphical representation of a phyloseq object.

**Usage**

```
summary_plot_pq(
  physeq,
  add_info = TRUE,
  min_seq_samples = 500,
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  text_size = 1,
  text_size_info = 1
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
add_info	Does the bottom down corner contain extra informations?
min_seq_samples	(int): Used only when add_info is set to true to print the number of samples with less sequences than this number.
clean_pq	(logical): Does the phyloseq object is cleaned using the <a href="#">clean_pq()</a> function?
text_size	(Num, default 1) A size factor to expand or minimize text size.
text_size_info	(Num, default 1) A size factor to expand or minimize text size for extra informations.

**Value**

A ggplot2 object

**Examples**

```
summary_plot_pq(data_fungi)
summary_plot_pq(data_fungi, add_info = FALSE) + scale_fill_viridis_d()
if (requireNamespace("patchwork")) {
  (summary_plot_pq(data_fungi, text_size = 0.5, text_size_info = 0.6) +
   summary_plot_pq(data_fungi_mini, text_size = 0.5, text_size_info = 0.6)) /
  (summary_plot_pq(data_fungi_sp_known, text_size = 0.5, text_size_info = 0.6) +
   summary_plot_pq(subset_taxa(data_fungi_sp_known, Phylum == "Ascomycota"),
    text_size = 0.5, text_size_info = 0.6
  ))
}
```

---

swarm_clustering	<i>Re-cluster sequences of an object of class physeq or cluster a list of DNA sequences using SWARM</i>
------------------	---

---

**Description**

A wrapper of SWARM software.

**Usage**

```
swarm_clustering(
  physeq = NULL,
  dna_seq = NULL,
  d = 1,
  swarnpath = "swarm",
  vsearch_path = "vsearch",
  nproc = 1,
  swarm_args = "--fastidious",
  tax_adjust = 0,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
dna_seq	NOT WORKING FOR THE MOMENT You may directly use a character vector of DNA sequences in place of physeq args. When physeq is set, dna sequences take the value of physeq@refseq
d	(default: 1) maximum number of differences allowed between two amplicons, meaning that two amplicons will be grouped if they have d (or less) differences
swarnpath	(default: swarm) path to swarm

vsearch_path	(default: vsearch) path to vsearch, used only if physeq is NULL and dna_seq is provided.
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for the clustering
swarm_args	(default : "-fastidious") a one length character element defining other parameters to passed on to swarm See other possible methods in the <a href="#">SWARM pdf manual</a>
tax_adjust	(Default 0) See the man page of <a href="#">merge_taxa_vec()</a> for more details. To conserved the taxonomic rank of the most abundant ASV,
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files ? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• temp.fasta (refseq in fasta or dna_seq sequences)</li> <li>• temp_output (classical output of SWARM)</li> <li>• temp_uclust (clusters output of SWARM)</li> </ul>

### Details

This function use the [merge\\_taxa\\_vec](#) function to merge taxa into clusters. By default `tax_adjust = 0`. See the man page of [merge\\_taxa\\_vec\(\)](#).

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [SWARM](#).

### Value

A new object of class physeq or a list of cluster if `dna_seq` args was used.

### References

SWARM can be downloaded from <https://github.com/torognes/swarm/>.

SWARM can be downloaded from <https://github.com/torognes/swarm>. More information in the associated publications [doi:10.1093/bioinformatics/btab493](https://doi.org/10.1093/bioinformatics/btab493) and [doi:10.7717/peerj.593](https://doi.org/10.7717/peerj.593)

### See Also

[postcluster\\_pq\(\)](#), [vsearch\\_clustering\(\)](#)

### Examples

```
summary_plot_pq(data_fungi)
system2("swarm", "-h")

data_fungi_swarm <- swarm_clustering(data_fungi)
summary_plot_pq(data_fungi_swarm)

sequences_ex <- c(
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGGGCGAATTAATAACGAATTCATTGAATCA",
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGGGCGAATTACCTGGTAAGGCCCACTT",
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGGGCGAATTACCTGGTAGAGGTG",
  "TACCTATGTTGCCTTGGCGGCTAAACCTACC",
  "CGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACCTGGTATTTAGCCCACTTACCCGGTACCATGAGGTG",
```

```

    "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACCTGG",
    "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACAAAG",
    "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACAAAG",
    "GCGGCTAAACCTACCCGGGATTTGATGGCGAATTACAAAG"
  )

  sequences_ex_swarm <- swarm_clustering(
    dna_seq = sequences_ex
  )

```

---

taxa_as_columns	<i>Force taxa to be in columns in the otu_table of a physeq object</i>
-----------------	--

---

### Description

Mainly for internal use. It is a special case of `clean_pq` function.

### Usage

```
taxa_as_columns(physeq)
```

### Arguments

`physeq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

### Value

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

---

taxa_as_rows	<i>Force taxa to be in columns in the otu_table of a physeq object</i>
--------------	--

---

### Description

Mainly for internal use. It is a special case of `clean_pq` function.

### Usage

```
taxa_as_rows(physeq)
```

### Arguments

`physeq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

**Value**

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

---

taxa\_only\_in\_one\_level

*Show taxa which are present in only one given level of a modality*

---

**Description**

Given one modality name in `sam_data` and one level of the modality, return the taxa strictly specific of this level.

**Usage**

```
taxa_only_in_one_level(  
  physeq,  
  modality,  
  level,  
  min_nb_seq_taxa = 0,  
  min_nb_samples_taxa = 0  
)
```

```
taxa_only_in_one_level(  
  physeq,  
  modality,  
  level,  
  min_nb_seq_taxa = 0,  
  min_nb_samples_taxa = 0  
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>physeq</code>	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
<code>modality</code>	(required) The name of a column present in the <code>@sam_data</code> slot of the <code>physeq</code> object. Must be a character vector or a factor.
<code>level</code>	(required) The level (must be present in modality) of interest
<code>min_nb_seq_taxa</code>	(default 0 = no filter) The minimum number of sequences per taxa
<code>min_nb_samples_taxa</code>	(default 0 = no filter) The minimum number of samples per taxa

**Value**

A vector of taxa names

A vector of taxa names

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```

data_fungi_mini_woNA4height <- subset_samples(
  data_fungi_mini,
  !is.na(data_fungi_mini@sam_data$Height)
)
taxa_only_in_one_level(data_fungi_mini_woNA4height, "Height", "High")
#' # Taxa present only in low height samples
suppressMessages(suppressWarnings(
  taxa_only_in_one_level(data_fungi, "Height", "Low")
))
# Number of taxa present only in sample of time equal to 15
suppressMessages(suppressWarnings(
  length(taxa_only_in_one_level(data_fungi, "Time", "15"))
))
data_fungi_mini_woNA4height <- subset_samples(
  data_fungi_mini,
  !is.na(data_fungi_mini@sam_data$Height)
)
taxa_only_in_one_level(data_fungi_mini_woNA4height, "Height", "High")
#' # Taxa present only in low height samples
suppressMessages(suppressWarnings(
  taxa_only_in_one_level(data_fungi, "Height", "Low")
))
# Number of taxa present only in sample of time equal to 15
suppressMessages(suppressWarnings(
  length(taxa_only_in_one_level(data_fungi, "Time", "15"))
))

```

---

tax\_bar\_pq

---

*Plot the distribution of sequences or ASV in one taxonomic levels*


---

**Description**

Graphical representation of distribution of taxonomy, optionnaly across a factor.

**Usage**

```

tax_bar_pq(
  physeq,
  fact = "Sample",

```

```

  taxa = "Order",
  percent_bar = FALSE,
  nb_seq = TRUE
)

```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam_data.
taxa	(default: 'Order') Name of the taxonomic rank of interest
percent_bar	(default FALSE) If TRUE, the stacked bar fill all the space between 0 and 1. It just set position = "fill" in the <code>ggplot2::geom_bar()</code> function
nb_seq	(logical; default TRUE) If set to FALSE, only the number of ASV is count. Concretely, physeq otu_table is transformed in a binary otu_table (each value different from zero is set to one)

### Value

A [ggplot2](#) plot with bar representing the number of sequence en each taxonomic groups

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

[plot\\_tax\\_pq\(\)](#) and [multitax\\_bar\\_pq\(\)](#)

### Examples

```

data_fungi_ab <- subset_taxa_pq(data_fungi, taxa_sums(data_fungi) > 10000)
tax_bar_pq(data_fungi_ab) + theme(legend.position = "none")

tax_bar_pq(data_fungi_ab, taxa = "Class")
tax_bar_pq(data_fungi_ab, taxa = "Class", percent_bar = TRUE)
tax_bar_pq(data_fungi_ab, taxa = "Class", fact = "Time")

```

---

tax\_datatable

*Make a datatable with the taxonomy of a [phyloseq-class](#) object*

---

### Description

An interactive table for phyloseq taxonomy.



**Usage**

```
tax_datatable(  
  physeq,  
  abundance = TRUE,  
  taxonomic_level = NULL,  
  modality = NULL,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
abundance	(default: TRUE) Does the number of sequences is print
taxonomic_level	(default: NULL) a vector of selected taxonomic level using their column numbers (e.g. taxonomic_level = 1:7)
modality	(default: NULL) A sample modality to split OTU abundancy by level of the modality
...	Other argument for the datatable function

**Value**

A datatable

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**Examples**

```
data("GlobalPatterns", package = "phyloseq")  
if (requireNamespace("DT")) {  
  tax_datatable(subset_taxa(  
    GlobalPatterns,  
    rowSums(GlobalPatterns@otu_table) > 10000  
  ))  
  
  # Using modality  
  tax_datatable(GlobalPatterns,  
    modality = GlobalPatterns@sam_data$SampleType  
  )  
}
```

---

tbl\_sum\_samdata      *Summarize information from sample data in a table*


---

## Description

A wrapper for the `gtsummary::tbl_summary()` function in the case of physeq object.

## Usage

```
tbl_sum_samdata(physeq, remove_col_unique_value = TRUE, ...)
```

## Arguments

`physeq`            (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
`remove_col_unique_value`  
                   (logical, default TRUE) Do we remove informative columns (categorical column with one value per samples), e.g. samples names ?  
`...`             Additional arguments passed on to `gtsummary::tbl_summary()`.

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `gtsummary::tbl_summary()` if you use this function.

## Value

A new [phyloseq-class](#) object with a larger slot `tax_table`

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("gtsummary")) {
  tbl_sum_samdata(data_fungi) %>%
  gtsummary::as_kable()

  summary_samdata <- tbl_sum_samdata(data_fungi,
    include = c("Time", "Height"),
    type = list(Time ~ "continuous2", Height ~ "categorical"),
    statistic = list(Time ~ c("{median} ({p25}, {p75})", "{min}, {max}"))
  )
}

data(enterotype)
if (requireNamespace("gtsummary")) {
  summary_samdata <- tbl_sum_samdata(enterotype)
```

```
summary_samdata <- tbl_sum_samdata(enterotype, include = !contains("SampleId"))
}
```

---

tbl_sum_taxtable	<i>Summarize a tax_table (taxonomic slot of phyloseq object) using gtsummary</i>
------------------	--

---

### Description

Mainly a wrapper for the `gtsummary::tbl_summary()` function in the case of phyloseq object.

### Usage

```
tbl_sum_taxtable(phyloseq, taxonomic_ranks = NULL, ...)
```

### Arguments

`phyloseq` (required): a `phyloseq-class` object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
`taxonomic_ranks` A list of taxonomic ranks we want to summarized.  
`...` Additional arguments passed on to `gtsummary::tbl_summary()`

### Value

A table of class `c('tbl_summary', 'gtsummary')`

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
tbl_sum_taxtable(data_fungi_mini)
data_fungi_mini |>
  filt_taxa_pq(min_occurrence = 2) |>
  tbl_sum_taxtable(taxonomic_rank = c("Species", "Genus"))
```

---

Tengeler2020_pq	<i>This tutorial explores the dataset from Tengeler et al. (2020) available in the mia package. obtained using</i> <code>mia::makePhyloseqFromTreeSE(Tengeler2020)</code>
-----------------	--

---

### Description

This is a phyloseq version of the Tengeler2020 dataset.

### Usage

```
data(Tengeler2020_pq)
```

### Format

A phyloseq object

### Details

Tengeler2020 includes gut microbiota profiles of 27 persons with ADHD. A standard bioinformatic and statistical analysis done to demonstrate that altered microbial composition could be a driver of altered brain structure and function and concomitant changes in the animals behavior. This was investigated by colonizing young, male, germ-free C57BL/6JOLaHsd mice with microbiota from individuals with and without ADHD.

Tengeler, A.C., Dam, S.A., Wiesmann, M. et al. Gut microbiota from persons with attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder affects the brain in mice. *Microbiome* 8, 44 (2020). <https://microbiomejournal.biomedcentral.com/020-00816-x>

---

track_wkflow	<i>Track the number of reads (= sequences), samples and cluster (e.g. ASV) from various objects including dada-class and derep-class.</i>
--------------	---

---

### Description

- List of fastq and fastg.gz files -> nb of reads and samples
- List of dada-class -> nb of reads, clusters (ASV) and samples
- List of derep-class -> nb of reads, clusters (unique sequences) and samples
- Matrix of samples x clusters (e.g. otu\_table) -> nb of reads, clusters and samples
- Phyloseq-class -> nb of reads, clusters and samples

**Usage**

```
track_wkflow(
  list_of_objects,
  obj_names = NULL,
  clean_pq = FALSE,
  taxonomy_rank = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

<code>list_of_objects</code>	(required) a list of objects
<code>obj_names</code>	A list of names corresponding to the list of objects
<code>clean_pq</code>	(logical) If set to TRUE, empty samples and empty ASV are discarded before clustering.
<code>taxonomy_rank</code>	A vector of int. Define the column number of taxonomic rank in <code>physeq@tax_table</code> to compute the number of unique value. Default is NULL and do not compute values for any taxonomic rank
<code>verbose</code>	(logical) If true, print some additional messages.
<code>...</code>	Additional arguments passed on to <code>clean_pq()</code> function.

**Value**

The number of sequences, clusters (e.g. OTUs, ASVs) and samples for each object.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[track\\_wkflow\\_samples\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
data(enterotype)
if (requireNamespace("pbapply")) {
  track_wkflow(list(data_fungi, enterotype), taxonomy_rank = c(3, 5))
  track_wkflow(list(
    "data FUNGI" = data_fungi,
    "fastq files forward" =
      unlist(list_fastq_files(system.file("extdata", package = "MiscMetabar"),
        paired_end = FALSE
      ))
  ))
}
```

---

`track_wkflow_samples` *Track the number of reads (= sequences), samples and cluster (e.g. ASV) for each sample*

---

### Description

Contrary to `track_wkflow()`, only phyloseq object are possible. More information are available in the manual of the function `track_wkflow()`

### Usage

```
track_wkflow_samples(list_pq_obj, ...)
```

### Arguments

`list_pq_obj` (required): a list of object passed on to `track_wkflow()` Only phyloseq object will return value because information of sample is needed

`...` Other args passed on to `track_wkflow()`

### Value

A list of dataframe. cf `track_wkflow()` for more information

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
tree_A10_005 <- subset_samples(data_fungi, Tree_name == "A10-005")
if (requireNamespace("pbapply")) {
  track_wkflow_samples(tree_A10_005)
}
```

---

`transp` *Adds transparency to a vector of colors*

---

### Description

Adds transparency to a vector of colors

### Usage

```
transp(col, alpha = 0.5)
```

**Arguments**

`col` a vector of colors  
`alpha` (default 0.5) a numeric value between 0 and 1 representing the alpha coefficient; 0: total transparency; 1: no transparency.

**Value**

a color vector

**Author(s)**

Thibaut Jombart in adegenet package

**See Also**

The R package RColorBrewer, proposing a nice selection of color palettes. The viridis package, with many excellent palettes

---

`treemap_pq`*Plot treemap of 2 taxonomic levels*

---

**Description**

Note that `lv12` need to be nested in `lv11`

**Usage**

```
treemap_pq(  
  physeq,  
  lv11,  
  lv12,  
  nb_seq = TRUE,  
  log10trans = TRUE,  
  plot_legend = FALSE,  
  ...  
)
```

**Arguments**

`physeq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
`lv11` (required) Name of the first (higher) taxonomic rank of interest  
`lv12` (required) Name of the second (lower) taxonomic rank of interest  
`nb_seq` (logical; default TRUE) If set to FALSE, only the number of ASV is count. Concretely, `physeq otu_table` is transformed in a binary `otu_table` (each value different from zero is set to one)

`log10trans` (logical, default TRUE) If TRUE, the number of sequences (or ASV if `nb_seq = FALSE`) is log10 transformed.

`plot_legend` (logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, plot the legend of color for lvl 1

... Additional arguments passed on to `treemapify::geom_treemap()` function.

### Value

A `ggplot2` object

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### Examples

```
data(data_fungi_sp_known)
if (requireNamespace("treemapify")) {
  treemap_pq(
    clean_pq(subset_taxa(
      data_fungi_sp_known,
      Phylum == "Basidiomycota"
    )),
    "Order", "Class",
    plot_legend = TRUE
  )
}

if (requireNamespace("treemapify")) {
  treemap_pq(
    clean_pq(subset_taxa(
      data_fungi_sp_known,
      Phylum == "Basidiomycota"
    )),
    "Order", "Class",
    log10trans = FALSE
  )
  treemap_pq(
    clean_pq(subset_taxa(
      data_fungi_sp_known,
      Phylum == "Basidiomycota"
    )),
    "Order", "Class",
    nb_seq = FALSE, log10trans = FALSE
  )
}
```



---

tsne_pq	<i>Compute tSNE position of samples from a phyloseq object</i>
---------	--

---

**Description**

Compute tSNE position of samples from a phyloseq object

**Usage**

```
tsne_pq(physeq, method = "bray", dims = 2, theta = 0, perplexity = 30, ...)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
method	A method to calculate distance using <code>vegan::vegdist()</code> function
dims	(Int) Output dimensionality (default: 2)
theta	(Numeric) Speed/accuracy trade-off (increase for less accuracy), set to 0.0 for exact TSNE (default: 0.0 see details in the man page of <code>Rtsne::Rtsne</code> ).
perplexity	(Numeric) Perplexity parameter (should not be bigger than $3 * \text{perplexity} < \text{nrow}(X) - 1$ , see details in the man page of <code>Rtsne::Rtsne</code> )
...	Additional arguments passed on to <code>Rtsne::Rtsne()</code>

**Value**

A list of element including the matrix Y containing the new representations for the objects. See `?Rtsne::Rtsne()` for more information

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("Rtsne")) {
  res_tsne <- tsne_pq(data_fungi)
}
```

---

umap_pq	<i>Computes a manifold approximation and projection (UMAP) for phyloseq object</i>
---------	--

---

**Description**

<https://journals.asm.org/doi/full/10.1128/msystems.00691-21>

**Usage**

```
umap_pq(physeq, pkg = "umap", ...)
```

**Arguments**

**physeq** (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.  
**pkg** Which R packages to use, either "umap" or "uwot".  
**...** Additional arguments passed on to `umap::umap()` or `uwot::umap2()` function. For example `n_neighbors` set the number of nearest neighbors (Default 15). See `umap::umap.defaults()` or `uwot::umap2()` for the list of parameters and default values.

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `umap::umap()` if you use this function.

**Value**

A dataframe with samples informations and the `x_umap` and `y_umap` position

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[umap::umap\(\)](#), [tsne\\_pq\(\)](#), [phyloseq::plot\\_ordination\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```

library("umap")
df_umap <- umap_pq(data_fungi_mini)
ggplot(df_umap, aes(x = x_umap, y = y_umap, col = Height)) +
  geom_point(size = 2)

# library(patchwork)
# physeq <- data_fungi_mini
# res_tsne <- tsne_pq(data_fungi_mini)
# df_umap_tsne <- df_umap
# df_umap_tsne$x_tsne <- res_tsne$Y[, 1]
# df_umap_tsne$y_tsne <- res_tsne$Y[, 2]
# ((ggplot(df_umap, aes(x = x_umap, y = y_umap, col = Height)) +
#   geom_point(size = 2) +
#   ggtitle("UMAP")) + (plot_ordination(physeq,
#   ordination =
#     ordinate(physeq, method = "PCoA", distance = "bray"), color = "Height"
# )) +
#   ggtitle("PCoA")) /
# ((ggplot(df_umap_tsne, aes(x = x_tsne, y = y_tsne, col = Height)) +
#   geom_point(size = 2) +
#   ggtitle("tsne")) +
#   (plot_ordination(physeq,
#     ordination = ordinate(physeq, method = "NMDS", distance = "bray"),

```

```

#   color = "Height"
#   ) +
#   ggtitle("NMDS")) +
#   patchwork::plot_layout(guides = "collect")

# df_uwot <- umap_pq(data_fungi_mini, pkg = "uwot")

#   (ggplot(df_umap, aes(x = x_umap, y = y_umap, col = Height)) +
#     geom_point(size = 2) +
#     ggtitle("umap::umap")) /
#   (ggplot(df_uwot, aes(x = x_umap, y = y_umap, col = Height)) +
#     geom_point(size = 2) +
#     ggtitle("uwot::umap2"))

```

---

unique\_or\_na

*Get the unique value in x or NA if none*


---

### Description

If `unique(x)` is a single value, return it; otherwise, return an NA of the same type as `x`. If `x` is a factor, then the levels and ordered status will be kept in either case. If `x` is a non-atomic vector (i.e. a list), then the logical NA will be used.

### Usage

```
unique_or_na(x)
```

### Arguments

`x`                    A vector

### Value

Either a single value (if `unique(x)` return a single value) or a NA

### Author(s)

Michael R. McLaren (orcid: [0000-0003-1575-473X](https://orcid.org/0000-0003-1575-473X))

### Examples

```

f <- factor(c("a", "a", "b", "c"), ordered = TRUE)
unique_or_na(f)
unique_or_na(f[1:2])

x <- c("a", "b", "a")
unique_or_na(x[c(1, 3)])
unique_or_na(x)
unique_or_na(x) %>% typeof()

```

---

upset_pq	<i>Make upset plot for phyloseq object.</i>
----------	---

---

### Description

Alternative to venn plot.

### Usage

```
upset_pq(
  physeq,
  fact,
  taxa_fill = NULL,
  min_nb_seq = 0,
  na_remove = TRUE,
  numeric_fonction = sum,
  rarefy_after_merging = FALSE,
  ...
)
```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required): Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam_data.
taxa_fill	(default NULL) fill the ASV upset using a column in tax_table slot.
min_nb_seq	minimum number of sequences by OTUs by samples to take into count this OTUs in this sample. For example, if min_nb_seq=2,each value of 2 or less in the OTU table will not count in the venn diagram
na_remove	: if TRUE (the default), NA values in fact are removed if FALSE, NA values are set to "NA"
numeric_fonction	(default : sum) the function for numeric vector useful only for complex plot (see examples)
rarefy_after_merging	Rarefy each sample after merging by the modalities of fact parameter
...	Additional arguments passed on to the <a href="#">ComplexUpset::upset()</a>

### Value

A [ggplot2](#) plot

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**[ggvenn\\_pq\(\)](#)**Examples**

```

if (requireNamespace("ComplexUpset")) {
  upset_pq(data_fungi_mini,
    fact = "Height", width_ratio = 0.2,
    taxa_fill = "Class"
  )
}

if (requireNamespace("ComplexUpset")) {
  upset_pq(data_fungi_mini, fact = "Height", min_nb_seq = 1000)
  upset_pq(data_fungi_mini, fact = "Height", na_remove = FALSE)

  upset_pq(data_fungi_mini, fact = "Time", width_ratio = 0.2, rarefy_after_merging = TRUE)

  upset_pq(
    data_fungi_mini,
    fact = "Time",
    width_ratio = 0.2,
    annotations = list(
      "Sequences per ASV \n (log10)" = (
        ggplot(mapping = aes(y = log10(Abundance)))
        +
          geom_jitter(aes(
            color =
              Abundance
          ), na.rm = TRUE)
        +
          geom_violin(alpha = 0.5, na.rm = TRUE) +
          theme(legend.key.size = unit(0.2, "cm")) +
          theme(axis.text = element_text(size = 12))
        ),
      "ASV per phylum" = (
        ggplot(mapping = aes(fill = Phylum))
        +
          geom_bar() +
          ylab("ASV per phylum") +
          theme(legend.key.size = unit(0.2, "cm")) +
          theme(axis.text = element_text(size = 12))
        )
      )
    )
  )

  upset_pq(
    data_fungi_mini,
    fact = "Time",
    width_ratio = 0.2,
    numeric_fonction = mean,
    annotations = list(

```

```

"Sequences per ASV \n (log10)" = (
  ggplot(mapping = aes(y = log10(Abundance)))
  +
  geom_jitter(aes(
    color =
      Abundance
  )), na.rm = TRUE)
  +
  geom_violin(alpha = 0.5, na.rm = TRUE) +
  theme(legend.key.size = unit(0.2, "cm")) +
  theme(axis.text = element_text(size = 12))
),
"ASV per phylum" = (
  ggplot(mapping = aes(fill = Phylum))
  +
  geom_bar() +
  ylab("ASV per phylum") +
  theme(legend.key.size = unit(0.2, "cm")) +
  theme(axis.text = element_text(size = 12))
)
)
)
)

upset_pq(
  subset_taxa(data_fungi_mini, Phylum == "Basidiomycota"),
  fact = "Time",
  width_ratio = 0.2,
  base_annotations = list(),
  annotations = list(
    "Sequences per ASV \n (log10)" = (
      ggplot(mapping = aes(y = log10(Abundance)))
      +
      geom_jitter(aes(
        color =
          Abundance
      )), na.rm = TRUE)
      +
      geom_violin(alpha = 0.5, na.rm = TRUE) +
      theme(legend.key.size = unit(0.2, "cm")) +
      theme(axis.text = element_text(size = 12))
    ),
    "ASV per phylum" = (
      ggplot(mapping = aes(fill = Class))
      +
      geom_bar() +
      ylab("ASV per Class") +
      theme(legend.key.size = unit(0.2, "cm")) +
      theme(axis.text = element_text(size = 12))
    )
  )
)
)

data_fungi2 <- data_fungi_mini

```

```

data_fungi2@sam_data[["Time_0"]] <- data_fungi2@sam_data$Time == 0
data_fungi2@sam_data[["Height__Time_0"]] <-
  paste0(data_fungi2@sam_data[["Height"]], "__", data_fungi2@sam_data[["Time_0"]])
data_fungi2@sam_data[["Height__Time_0"]][grepl("NA", data_fungi2@sam_data[["Height__Time_0"]])] <-
  NA
upset_pq(data_fungi2, fact = "Height__Time_0", width_ratio = 0.2, min_size = 2)
}

```

---

upset\_test\_pq

*Test for differences between intersections*


---

### Description

See [upset\\_pq\(\)](#) to plot upset.

### Usage

```

upset_test_pq(
  physeq,
  fact,
  var_to_test = "OTU",
  min_nb_seq = 0,
  na_remove = TRUE,
  numeric_fonction = sum,
  ...
)

```

### Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
fact	(required): Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in physeq@sam_data.
var_to_test	(default c("OTU")) : a vector of column present in the tax_table slot from the physeq object
min_nb_seq	minimum number of sequences by OTUs by samples to take into count this OTUs in this sample. For example, if min_nb_seq=2,each value of 2 or less in the OTU table will not count in the venn diagram
na_remove	: if TRUE (the default), NA values in fact are removed if FALSE, NA values are set to "NA"
numeric_fonction	(default : sum) the function for numeric vector useful only for complex plot (see examples)
...	Additional arguments passed on to the <a href="#">ComplexUpset::upset_test()</a>

**Value**

A `ggplot2` plot

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

`upset_pq()`

**Examples**

```
data(data_fungi)
if (requireNamespace("ComplexUpset")) {
  upset_test_pq(data_fungi, "Height", var_to_test = c("OTU", "Class", "Guild"))
  upset_test_pq(data_fungi, "Time")
}
```

---

var\_par\_pq

*Partition the Variation of a phyloseq object by 2, 3, or 4 Explanatory Matrices*

---

**Description**

The function partitions the variation in `otu_table` using distance (Bray per default) with respect to two, three, or four explanatory tables, using adjusted  $R^2$  in redundancy analysis ordination (RDA) or distance-based redundancy analysis. If response is a single vector, partitioning is by partial regression. Collinear variables in the explanatory tables do NOT have to be removed prior to partitioning. See `vegan::varpart()` for more information.

**Usage**

```
var_par_pq(
  physeq,
  list_component,
  dist_method = "bray",
  dbrda_computation = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

`physeq` (required): a `phyloseq-class` object obtained using the `phyloseq` package.

`list_component` (required) A named list of 2, 3 or four vectors with names from the `@sam_data` slot.

`dist_method` (default "bray") the distance used. See `phyloseq::distance()` for all available distances or run `phyloseq::distanceMethodList()`. For "aitchison" and "robust.aitchison" distance, `vegan::vegdist()` function is directly used.



dbrda\_computation

(logical) Do dbrda computations are runned for each individual component (each name of the list component) ?

### Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to `vegan::varpart()` if you use this function.

### Value

an object of class "varpart", see `vegan::varpart()`

### Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

### See Also

`var_par_rarperm_pq()`, `vegan::varpart()`, `plot_var_part_pq()`

### Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("vegan")) {
  data_fungi_woNA <-
    subset_samples(data_fungi, !is.na(Time) & !is.na(Height))
  res_var <- var_par_pq(data_fungi_woNA,
    list_component = list(
      "Time" = c("Time"),
      "Size" = c("Height", "Diameter")
    ),
    dbrda_computation = TRUE
  )
}
```

---

var\_par\_rarperm\_pq      *Partition the Variation of a phyloseq object with rarefaction permutations*

---

### Description

This is an extension of the function `var_par_pq()`. The main addition is the computation of nperm permutations with rarefaction even depth by sample. The return object

**Usage**

```
var_par_rarperm_pq(
  physeq,
  list_component,
  dist_method = "bray",
  nperm = 99,
  quantile_prob = 0.975,
  dbrda_computation = FALSE,
  dbrda_signif_pval = 0.05,
  sample.size = min(sample_sums(physeq)),
  verbose = FALSE,
  progress_bar = TRUE
)
```

**Arguments**

**physeq** (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

**list\_component** (required) A named list of 2, 3 or four vectors with names from the @sam\_data slot.

**dist\_method** (default "bray") the distance used. See [phyloseq::distance\(\)](#) for all available distances or run [phyloseq::distanceMethodList\(\)](#). For aitchison and robust.aitchison distance, [vegan::vegdist\(\)](#) function is directly used. # @param fill\_bg

**nperm** (int) The number of permutations to perform.

**quantile\_prob** (float, [0:1]) the value to compute the quantile. Minimum quantile is compute using 1-quantile\_prob.

**dbrda\_computation** (logical) Do dbrda computations are runned for each individual component (each name of the list component) ?

**dbrda\_signif\_pval** (float, [0:1]) The value under which the dbrda is considered significant.

**sample.size** (int) A single integer value equal to the number of reads being simulated, also known as the depth. See [phyloseq::rarefy\\_even\\_depth\(\)](#).

**verbose** (logical). If TRUE, print additional information.

**progress\_bar** (logical, default TRUE) Do we print progress during the calculation?

**Details**

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please make a reference to [vegan::varpart\(\)](#) if you use this function.

**Value**

A list of class varpart with additional information in the \$part\$indfract part. Adj.R.square is the mean across permutation. Adj.R.squared\_quantil\_min and Adj.R.squared\_quantil\_max represent the quantile values of adjusted R squared

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**[var\\_par\\_pq\(\)](#), [vegan::varpart\(\)](#), [plot\\_var\\_part\\_pq\(\)](#)**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("vegan")) {
  data_fungi_woNA <- subset_samples(data_fungi, !is.na(Time) & !is.na(Height))
  res_var_9 <- var_par_rarperm_pq(
    data_fungi_woNA,
    list_component = list(
      "Time" = c("Time"),
      "Size" = c("Height", "Diameter")
    ),
    nperm = 9,
    dbrda_computation = TRUE
  )
  res_var_2 <- var_par_rarperm_pq(
    data_fungi_woNA,
    list_component = list(
      "Time" = c("Time"),
      "Size" = c("Height", "Diameter")
    ),
    nperm = 2,
    dbrda_computation = TRUE
  )
}
```

---

`venn_pq`*Venn diagram of [phyloseq-class](#) object*

---

**Description**

Graphical representation of distribution of taxa across combined modality of a factor.

**Usage**

```
venn_pq(physeq, fact, min_nb_seq = 0, print_values = TRUE)
```

**Arguments**

`physeq` (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

`fact` (required): Name of the factor to cluster samples by modalities. Need to be in `physeq@sam_data`.

`min_nb_seq` (default: 0): minimum number of sequences by OTUs by samples to take into count this OTUs in this sample. For example, if `min_nb_seq=2`, each value of 2 or less in the OTU table will be change into 0 for the analysis

`print_values` (logical) Print (or not) the table of number of OTUs for each combination. If `print_values` is TRUE the object is not a ggplot object. Please use `print_values = FALSE` if you want to add ggplot function (cf example).

**Value**

A `ggplot2` plot representing Venn diagram of modalities of the argument factor

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[venneuler](#)

**Examples**

```
if (requireNamespace("venneuler")) {
  data("enterotype")
  venn_pq(enterotype, fact = "SeqTech")
}

if (requireNamespace("venneuler")) {
  venn_pq(enterotype, fact = "ClinicalStatus")
  venn_pq(enterotype, fact = "Nationality", print_values = FALSE)
  venn_pq(enterotype, fact = "ClinicalStatus", print_values = FALSE) +
    scale_fill_hue()
  venn_pq(enterotype, fact = "ClinicalStatus", print_values = FALSE) +
    scale_fill_hue()
}
```

---

verify\_pq

*Verify the validity of a phyloseq object*

---

**Description**

Mostly for internal use in MiscMetabar functions.

**Usage**

```
verify_pq(
  physeq,
  verbose = FALSE,
  min_nb_seq_sample = 500,
  min_nb_seq_taxa = 1
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq (required): a [phyloseq-class](#) object obtained using the phyloseq package.

verbose (logical, default FALSE) If TRUE, prompt some warnings.

min\_nb\_seq\_sample (numeric) Only used if verbose = TRUE. Minimum number of sequences per samples to not show warning.

min\_nb\_seq\_taxa (numeric) Only used if verbose = TRUE. Minimum number of sequences per taxa to not show warning.

**Value**

Nothing if the phyloseq object is valid. An error in the other case. Warnings if verbose = TRUE

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

---

vsearch_clustering	<i>Recluster sequences of an object of class physeq or cluster a list of DNA sequences using vsearch software</i>
--------------------	---

---

**Description**

A wrapper of VSEARCH software.

**Usage**

```
vsearch_clustering(
  physeq = NULL,
  dna_seq = NULL,
  nproc = 1,
  id = 0.97,
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  tax_adjust = 0,
  vsearch_cluster_method = "--cluster_size",
  vsearch_args = "--strand both",
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
dna_seq	You may directly use a character vector of DNA sequences in place of physeq args. When physeq is set, dna sequences take the value of physeq@refseq
nproc	(default: 1) Set to number of cpus/processors to use for the clustering
id	(default: 0.97) level of identity to cluster
vsearchpath	(default: "vsearch") path to vsearch
tax_adjust	(Default 0) See the man page of <a href="#">merge_taxa_vec()</a> for more details. To conserved the taxonomic rank of the most abundant ASV, set tax_adjust to 0 (default). For the moment only tax_adjust = 0 is robust
vsearch_cluster_method	(default: "--cluster_size") See other possible methods in the <a href="#">vsearch manual</a> (e.g. --cluster_size or --cluster_smallmem) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• --cluster_fast : Clusterize the fasta sequences in filename, automatically sort by decreasing sequence length beforehand.</li> <li>• --cluster_size : Clusterize the fasta sequences in filename, automatically sort by decreasing sequence abundance beforehand.</li> <li>• --cluster_smallmem : Clusterize the fasta sequences in filename without automatically modifying their order beforehand. Sequence are expected to be sorted by decreasing sequence length, unless <code>-usersort</code> is used. In that case you may set vsearch_args to vsearch_args = "--strand both -usersort"</li> </ul>
vsearch_args	(default : "--strand both") a one length character element defining other parameters to passed on to vsearch.
keep_temporary_files	(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files ? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• temp.fasta (refseq in fasta or dna_seq sequences)</li> <li>• cluster.fasta (centroid if method = "vsearch")</li> <li>• temp.uc (clusters if method = "vsearch")</li> </ul>

**Details**

This function use the [merge\\_taxa\\_vec\(\)](#) function to merge taxa into clusters. By default tax\_adjust = 0. See the man page of [merge\\_taxa\\_vec\(\)](#).

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [vsearch](#).

**Value**

A new object of class physeq or a list of cluster if dna\_seq args was used.

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

## References

VSEARCH can be downloaded from <https://github.com/torognes/vsearch>. More information in the associated publication <https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27781170>.

## See Also

[postcluster\\_pq\(\)](#), [swarm\\_clustering\(\)](#)

## Examples

```
summary_plot_pq(data_fungi)
d_vs <- vsearch_clustering(data_fungi)
summary_plot_pq(d_vs)
```

---

vs_search_global	<i>Search for a list of sequence in a fasta file against physeq reference sequences using R</i> <a href="https://github.com/torognes/vsearch">href=https://github.com/torognes/vsearch</a>
------------------	--

---

## Description

Use of VSEARCH software.

## Usage

```
vs_search_global(
  physeq,
  path_to_fasta = NULL,
  seq2search = NULL,
  vsearchpath = "vsearch",
  id = 0.8,
  iddef = 0,
  keep_temporary_files = FALSE
)
```

## Arguments

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
path_to_fasta	(required if seq2search is NULL) a path to fasta file if seq2search is est to NULL.
seq2search	(required if path_to_fasta is NULL) Either (i) a DNASTringSet object or (ii) a character vector that will be convert to DNASTringSet using <a href="#">Biostrings::DNASTringSet()</a>
vsearchpath	(default: "vsearch") path to vsearch
id	(default: 0.8) id for the option --usearch_global of the vsearch software
iddef	(default: 0) iddef for the option --usearch_global of the vsearch software

keep\_temporary\_files

(logical, default: FALSE) Do we keep temporary files

- temp.fasta (refseq in fasta)
- cluster.fasta (centroid)
- temp.uc (clusters)

## Details

This function is mainly a wrapper of the work of others. Please cite [vsearch](#).

## Value

A dataframe with uc results (invisible)

## Author(s)

Adrien Taudière

## Examples

```
if (requireNamespace("seqinr")) {
  file_dna <- tempfile("dna.fa")
  seqinr::write.fasta("GCCCATAGTATTCTAGTGGGCATGCCTGTTTCGAGCGTCATTTTCAACC",
    file = file_dna, names = "seq1"
  )

  res <- vs_search_global(data_fungi, path_to_fasta = file_dna)
  unlink(file_dna)

  res[res$identity != "*", ]

  clean_pq(subset_taxa(data_fungi, res$identity != "*"))
}
```

---

write\_pq

*Save phyloseq object in the form of multiple csv tables.*

---

## Description

This is the reverse function of [read\\_pq\(\)](#).



**Usage**

```
write_pq(
  physeq,
  path = NULL,
  rdata = FALSE,
  one_file = FALSE,
  write_sam_data = TRUE,
  sam_data_first = FALSE,
  clean_pq = TRUE,
  reorder_taxa = FALSE,
  rename_taxa = FALSE,
  remove_empty_samples = TRUE,
  remove_empty_taxa = TRUE,
  clean_samples_names = TRUE,
  silent = FALSE,
  verbose = FALSE,
  quote = FALSE,
  sep_csv = "\t",
  ...
)
```

**Arguments**

physeq	(required): a <a href="#">phyloseq-class</a> object obtained using the phyloseq package.
path	a path to the folder to save the phyloseq object
rdata	(logical) does the phyloseq object is also saved in Rdata format?
one_file	(logical) if TRUE, combine all data in one file only
write_sam_data	(logical) does the samples data are add to the file. Only used if one_file is TRUE. Note that these option result in a lot of NA values.
sam_data_first	(logical) if TRUE, put the sample data at the top of the table Only used if one_file and write_sam_data are both TRUE.
clean_pq	(logical) If set to TRUE, empty samples are discarded after subsetting taxa (ASV, OTU, ...)
reorder_taxa	(logical) if TRUE the otu_table is ordered by the number of sequences of taxa (ASV, OTU, ...) (descending order). Default to TRUE. Only possible if clean_pq is set to TRUE.
rename_taxa	reorder_taxa (logical) if TRUE, taxa (ASV, OTU, ...) are renamed by their position in the OTU_table (asv_1, asv_2, ...). Default to FALSE. Only possible if clean_pq is set to TRUE.
remove_empty_samples	(logical) Do you want to remove samples without sequences (this is done after removing empty taxa)
remove_empty_taxa	(logical) Do you want to remove taxa without sequences (this is done before removing empty samples)

<code>clean_samples_names</code>	(logical) Do you want to clean samples names?
<code>silent</code>	(logical) If true, no message are printing.
<code>verbose</code>	(logical) Additional informations in the message the verbose parameter overwrite the silent parameter.
<code>quote</code>	a logical value (default FALSE) or a numeric vector. If TRUE, any character or factor columns will be surrounded by double quotes. If a numeric vector, its elements are taken as the indices of columns to quote. In both cases, row and column names are quoted if they are written. If FALSE nothing is quoted.
<code>sep_csv</code>	(default tabulation) separator for column
<code>...</code>	Additional arguments passed on to <code>utils::write.table()</code> function.

**Value**

Build a folder (path) containing one to four csv tables (refseq.csv, otu\_table.csv, tax\_table.csv, sam\_data.csv) and if present a phy\_tree in Newick format

**Author(s)**

Adrien Taudière

**See Also**

[save\\_pq\(\)](#)

**Examples**

```
write_pq(data_fungi, path = paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"))
write_pq(data_fungi, path = paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"), one_file = TRUE)
unlink(paste0(tempdir(), "/phyloseq"), recursive = TRUE)
```

# Index

## \* datasets

- data\_fungi, 53
  - data\_fungi\_mini, 54
  - data\_fungi\_sp\_known, 55
  - Tengeler2020\_pq, 180
- accu\_plot, 5
- accu\_plot(), 8, 9
- accu\_plot\_balanced\_modality, 7
- accu\_plot\_balanced\_modality(), 145
- accu\_samp\_threshold, 9
- accu\_samp\_threshold(), 7
- add\_blast\_info, 10
- add\_dna\_to\_phyloseq, 11
- add\_funguild\_info, 11
- add\_funguild\_info(), 128
- add\_info\_to\_sam\_data, 12
- add\_new\_taxonomy\_pq, 13
- add\_new\_taxonomy\_pq(), 27, 33
- adespatial::beta.div(), 100, 129, 130, 134, 135
- adonis\_phyloseq  
(MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- adonis\_pq, 15, 112
- adonis\_pq(), 18
- adonis\_rarperm\_pq, 17
- all\_object\_size, 19
- ANCOMBC::ancombc2(), 19
- ancombc\_pq, 19
- ancombc\_pq(), 163
- are\_modality\_even\_depth, 20
- as\_binary\_otu\_table, 34
- assign\_blastn, 21
- assign\_blastn(), 14, 15, 27, 149
- assign\_dada2, 24
- assign\_dada2(), 14, 15
- assign\_idtaxa, 26
- assign\_idtaxa(), 14, 102
- assign\_sintax, 28
- assign\_sintax(), 14, 15, 22, 25, 27, 33
- assign\_vsearch\_lca, 30
- assign\_vsearch\_lca(), 14, 15, 27, 149
- asv2otu (postcluster\_pq), 141
- base::gsub(), 164
- base::load(), 160
- base::rowsum(), 110, 111
- Biostrings::DNASTringSet(), 44, 121, 199
- biplot\_physeq (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- biplot\_pq, 35, 112
- biplot\_pq(), 35, 93, 115
- blast\_pq, 37
- blast\_pq(), 10, 23, 39, 41
- blast\_to\_derep, 38
- blast\_to\_phyloseq, 40
- blast\_to\_phyloseq(), 38, 39
- build\_phytree\_pq, 41
- calcNormFactors, 120
- chimera\_detection\_vs, 43
- chimera\_detection\_vs(), 45
- chimera\_removal\_vs, 45
- chimera\_removal\_vs(), 44
- chordDiagram, 47
- circle\_pq, 46, 112
- circos.par, 47
- clean\_physeq (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- clean\_pq, 48, 112
- clean\_pq(), 45, 65, 128, 164, 165, 170, 181
- compare\_pairs\_pq, 49, 112
- ComplexUpset::upset(), 188
- ComplexUpset::upset\_test(), 191
- count\_seq, 50
- count\_seq(), 74
- cutadapt\_remove\_primers, 51
- dada2::assignSpecies(), 24, 25

- dada2::assignTaxonomy(), [14](#), [15](#), [24](#), [25](#),  
[66](#)  
 dada2::filterAndTrim(), [62](#), [63](#)  
 dada2::makeSequenceTable(), [45](#)  
 dada2::plotComplexity(), [124](#)  
 dada2::removeBimeraDenovo(), [44](#), [45](#)  
 dada2::seqComplexity(), [123](#), [124](#)  
 data\_fungi, [53](#)  
 data\_fungi\_mini, [54](#)  
 data\_fungi\_sp\_known, [55](#)  
 DECIPHER::Clusterize(), [142](#), [143](#)  
 DECIPHER::IdTaxa(), [26](#), [27](#)  
 DECIPHER::LearnTaxa(), [26](#), [101](#)  
 derep-class, [38](#)  
 DESeq, [125](#), [126](#)  
 DESeq2::results(), [125](#)  
 DGEList, [120](#)  
 diff\_fct\_diff\_class, [55](#)  
 dist\_bycol, [58](#)  
 dist\_pos\_control, [59](#)  
 distri\_1\_taxa, [57](#)  
  
 edgeR, [120](#)  
 edgeR::estimateTagwiseDisp(), [120](#)  
 exactTest, [127](#)  
  
 fac2col, [60](#)  
 filt\_taxa\_pq, [63](#)  
 filt\_taxa\_wo\_NA, [65](#)  
 filter\_asv\_blast, [60](#)  
 filter\_taxa\_blast (filter\_asv\_blast), [60](#)  
 filter\_trim, [62](#)  
 format2dada2, [66](#)  
 format2dada2(), [69](#)  
 format2dada2\_species, [67](#)  
 format2dada2\_species(), [67](#), [69](#)  
 format2sintax, [68](#)  
 format2sintax(), [66](#), [67](#)  
 formattable\_pq, [69](#)  
 funguild\_assign, [72](#)  
 funguild\_assign(), [75](#)  
 funky\_color, [73](#)  
  
 get\_file\_extension, [74](#)  
 get\_funguild\_db, [75](#)  
 get\_funguild\_db(), [73](#)  
 ggalluvial::geom\_flow(), [76](#)  
 ggaluv\_pq, [75](#)  
 ggaluv\_pq(), [159](#)  
  
 ggbetween\_pq, [77](#)  
 ggbetween\_pq(), [80](#), [90](#)  
 ggfittext::geom\_fit\_text(), [76](#)  
 ggplot, [6](#), [81](#), [85](#), [125–127](#), [131](#), [154](#), [176](#),  
[188](#), [192](#), [196](#)  
 ggplot2::geom\_label(), [36](#)  
 ggplot2::geom\_text(), [36](#)  
 ggplot2::stat\_ecdf(), [154](#)  
 ggrridges::geom\_density\_ridges(), [154](#)  
 ggscatt\_pq, [79](#)  
 ggstatsplot::ggbetweenstats(), [77](#), [78](#),  
[91](#), [92](#)  
 ggstatsplot::ggscatterstats(), [79](#)  
 ggVenn\_phyloseq  
     (MiscMetabar-deprecated), [111](#)  
 ggvenn\_pq, [80](#), [112](#)  
 ggvenn\_pq(), [189](#)  
 glmulti::glmulti(), [83](#), [84](#)  
 glmulti\_pq, [83](#)  
 graph\_test\_pq, [85](#), [112](#)  
 gtsummary::tbl\_summary(), [178](#), [179](#)  
  
 hill\_curves\_pq, [86](#)  
 hill\_phyloseq (MiscMetabar-deprecated),  
[111](#)  
 hill\_pq, [88](#), [112](#)  
 hill\_pq(), [77](#), [92](#), [144](#)  
 hill\_test\_rarperm\_pq, [90](#)  
 hill\_tuckey\_phyloseq  
     (MiscMetabar-deprecated), [111](#)  
 hill\_tuckey\_pq, [92](#), [112](#)  
  
 IdTaxa, [26](#), [27](#)  
 indicpecies::multipatt(), [112](#), [113](#)  
 iNEXT::iNEXT(), [93](#)  
 iNEXT\_pq, [93](#)  
 is\_cutadapt\_installed, [94](#)  
 is\_falco\_installed, [95](#)  
 is\_krona\_installed, [96](#)  
 is\_mumu\_installed, [96](#)  
 is\_swarm\_installed, [97](#)  
 is\_vsearch\_installed, [98](#)  
  
 krona, [98](#), [108](#)  
  
 LCBD\_pq, [100](#), [130](#), [135](#)  
 learn\_idtaxa, [101](#)  
 learn\_idtaxa(), [14](#), [26](#), [101](#)  
 list\_fastq\_files, [102](#)

- `list_fastq_files()`, 51
- `lulu`, 103
- `lulu()`, 106
- `lulu_phyloseq` (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- `lulu_pq`, 105, 112
- `lulu_pq()`, 117
- `merge_krona`, 99, 107
- `merge_krona()`, 99
- `merge_samples2`, 108
- `merge_samples2()`, 16, 18, 35, 50, 76, 85, 86, 93, 136
- `merge_samples2`, otu\_table-method (merge\_samples2), 108
- `merge_samples2`, phyloseq-method (merge\_samples2), 108
- `merge_samples2`, sample\_data-method (merge\_samples2), 108
- `merge_taxa_vec`, 110
- `merge_taxa_vec()`, 142, 143, 172, 198
- `merge_taxa_vec`, otu\_table-method (merge\_taxa\_vec), 110
- `merge_taxa_vec`, phylo-method (merge\_taxa\_vec), 110
- `merge_taxa_vec`, phyloseq-method (merge\_taxa\_vec), 110
- `merge_taxa_vec`, taxonomyTable-method (merge\_taxa\_vec), 110
- `merge_taxa_vec`, XStringSet-method (merge\_taxa\_vec), 110
- MiscMetabar-deprecated, 111
- MiscMetabar-package, 5
- `multcompLetters`, 89
- `multi_biplot_pq`, 115
- `multipatt_pq`, 112
- `multiplot`, 113
- `multitax_bar_pq`, 114
- `multitax_bar_pq()`, 136, 176
- `mumu_pq`, 116
- `mumu_pq()`, 107
- `no_legend`, 118
- `normalize_prop_pq`, 117
- `otu_circle` (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- `perc`, 119
- `phangorn::bootstrap.pml()`, 42
- `phangorn::optim.pml()`, 42
- `phyloseq-class`, 5, 34, 37, 40, 46, 80, 158, 170, 176, 195
- `phyloseq::distance()`, 16, 18, 192, 194
- `phyloseq::distanceMethodList()`, 16, 18, 192, 194
- `phyloseq::merge_taxa()`, 111
- `phyloseq::mt()`, 131
- `phyloseq::plot_ordination()`, 186
- `phyloseq::rarefy_even_depth()`, 8, 18, 76, 78, 79, 89, 91, 144, 194
- `phyloseq::subset_samples()`, 167
- `phyloseq::subset_taxa()`, 168
- `phyloseq_to_edgeR`, 120
- `phyloseqGraphTest::graph_perm_test()`, 85
- `physeq_graph_test` (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- `physeq_or_string_to_dna`, 120
- `plot`, 6
- `plot_ancombc_pq`, 121
- `plot_ancombc_pq()`, 163
- `plot_complexity_pq`, 123
- `plot_deseq2_phyloseq` (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- `plot_deseq2_pq`, 112, 125, 127
- `plot_edgeR_phyloseq` (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- `plot_edgeR_pq`, 112, 126, 126
- `plot_guild_pq`, 128
- `plot_guild_pq()`, 12
- `plot_LCBD_pq`, 100, 129
- `plot_mt`, 131
- `plot_refseq_extremity_pq`, 132
- `plot_refseq_pq`, 133
- `plot_SCBD_pq`, 134
- `plot_tax_pq`, 135
- `plot_tax_pq()`, 176
- `plot_tsne_pq`, 137
- `plot_var_part_pq`, 139
- `plot_var_part_pq()`, 193, 195
- `plotly::ggplotly()`, 36
- `postcluster_pq`, 141
- `postcluster_pq()`, 111, 120, 172, 199
- `psmelt_samples_pq`, 144
- `psmelt_samples_pq()`, 90
- `purrr::as_mapper()`, 109
- `rarefy_sample_count_by_modality`, 145

- rarefy\_sample\_count\_by\_modality(), 8
- read\_phyloseq (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- read\_pq, 112, 146
- read\_pq(), 200
- rename\_samples, 147
- rename\_samples(), 156
- rename\_samples\_otu\_table, 148
- reorder\_taxa\_pq, 148
- resolve\_vector\_ranks, 149
- resolve\_vector\_ranks(), 22, 23, 31, 33
- results, 125–127
- ridges\_pq, 153
- rotl\_pq, 155
- sam\_data\_matching\_names, 157
- sample\_data\_with\_new\_names, 156
- sankey\_phyloseq (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- sankey\_pq, 112, 158
- sankey\_pq(), 77
- sankeyNetwork, 158, 159
- save\_pq, 159
- save\_pq(), 202
- search\_exact\_seq\_pq, 160
- select\_one\_sample, 161
- select\_taxa, 162
- select\_taxa, otu\_table, character-method (select\_taxa), 162
- select\_taxa, phylo, character-method (select\_taxa), 162
- select\_taxa, phyloseq, character-method (select\_taxa), 162
- select\_taxa, sample\_data, character-method (select\_taxa), 162
- select\_taxa, taxonomyTable, character-method (select\_taxa), 162
- select\_taxa, XStringSet, character-method (select\_taxa), 162
- signif\_ancombc, 163
- simplify\_taxo, 164
- simplify\_taxo(), 23, 33
- specaccum, 7
- SRS::SRScurve(), 165
- SRS\_curve\_pq, 165
- subsample\_fastq, 166
- subset\_samples\_pq, 167
- subset\_taxa\_pq, 168
- subset\_taxa\_pq(), 12, 63, 65
- subset\_taxa\_tax\_control, 169
- summary\_plot\_phyloseq (MiscMetabar-deprecated), 111
- summary\_plot\_pq, 112, 170
- swarm\_clustering, 171
- swarm\_clustering(), 120, 143, 199
- tax\_bar\_pq, 175
- tax\_bar\_pq(), 136
- tax\_datatable, 176
- taxa\_as\_columns, 173
- taxa\_as\_rows, 173
- taxa\_only\_in\_one\_level, 174
- tbl\_sum\_samdata, 178
- tbl\_sum\_taxtable, 179
- Tengeler2020\_pq, 180
- tibble::tibble, 73, 75
- tidyr::separate\_wider\_delim(), 29, 33
- track\_wkflow, 180
- track\_wkflow(), 182
- track\_wkflow\_samples, 182
- track\_wkflow\_samples(), 161, 181
- transp, 182
- treemap\_pq, 183
- treemapify::geom\_treemap(), 184
- tsne\_pq, 185
- tsne\_pq(), 186
- umap::umap(), 186
- umap::umap.defaults(), 186
- umap\_pq, 185
- unique\_or\_na, 187
- upset\_pq, 188
- upset\_pq(), 81, 191, 192
- upset\_test\_pq, 191
- utils::read.csv(), 157
- utils::read.delim(), 156
- utils::write.table(), 146, 159, 202
- uwot::umap2(), 186
- var\_par\_pq, 192
- var\_par\_pq(), 139, 140, 193, 195
- var\_par\_rarperm\_pq, 193
- var\_par\_rarperm\_pq(), 139, 140, 193
- vegan::adonis2(), 15–18
- vegan::renyi(), 86, 87
- vegan::renyiaccum(), 86, 87
- vegan::varpart(), 192, 193, 195
- vegan::vegdist(), 16, 18, 59, 192, 194

vegdist, [58](#)  
venn\_phyloseq (MiscMetabar-deprecated),  
    [111](#)  
venn\_pq, [112](#), [195](#)  
venneuler, [196](#)  
verify\_pq, [196](#)  
vs\_search\_global, [199](#)  
vsearch\_clustering, [197](#)  
vsearch\_clustering(), [120](#), [143](#), [172](#)  
  
write\_phyloseq  
    (MiscMetabar-deprecated), [111](#)  
write\_phyloseq(), [146](#)  
write\_pq, [112](#), [200](#)  
write\_pq(), [146](#), [159](#), [160](#)